



**hugo**

# NORWEGIAN

## *in THREE MONTHS*

YOUR ESSENTIAL GUIDE TO UNDERSTANDING  
AND SPEAKING NORWEGIAN – FAST!

Hugo's world-renowned method is designed  
to give you a full working knowledge of Norwegian  
in double-quick time

- Essential grammar is simply explained





Hugo's Simplified System

# Norwegian in Three Months

Øivind Blom

Hugo's Language Books  
[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)



A DORLING KINDERSLEY BOOK

[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

This new and enlarged edition published in Great Britain  
in 1998 by Hugo's Language Books,  
an imprint of Dorling Kindersley Limited,  
9 Henrietta Street, London WC2E 8PS

Copyright 1998, 1999 © Dorling Kindersley Ltd  
2 4 6 8 10 9 7 5 3.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be  
reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted  
in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical,  
photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior  
written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record is available from the British Library.

ISBN 0 85285 343 2

*Norwegian in Three Months* is also available in  
a pack with four cassettes, ISBN 0 85285 344 0

Written by

Øivind Blom MA (Oslo)

Set in 10/12pt Palatino by  
Paul Williams @ Spirit Level  
Printed and bound by LegoPrint, Italy

## Preface

This new and enlarged edition of the Hugo course *Norwegian in Three Months* is designed for people who want to acquire a good working knowledge of the language in a short time, and who will probably be working at home without a teacher. The *Three Months* series as a whole is renowned for its success in self-tuition, with some titles proving to be equally useful in supporting teacher-led classes; this book is no exception. It provides a complete course in written and conversational Norwegian.

The author, Øivind Blom, has had many years' experience in teaching his native language, both in school and via correspondence courses, and in the preparation of self-tuition texts. He was also a co-editor of a 3-volume study of Norwegian, *Our Own Language*, published in 1987 by H. Aschehoug & Co. in Oslo.

The book begins with an explanation of Norwegian pronunciation, as far as this is possible in print. If you are working without a teacher, you will find that our system of 'imitated pronunciation' simplifies matters considerably. Using this book together with the related audio cassettes which we have produced as optional extras will add another dimension to your studies. Ask your bookseller for Hugo's *Norwegian in Three Months Cassette Course*.

It has always been a principle of the Hugo method to teach only what is really essential. We assume that the student wants to learn Norwegian from a practical angle; the chapters contain those rules of grammar that will be of most help in this respect. Constructions are clearly explained, and the order in which everything is presented takes into consideration the need for rapid progress. Each chapter includes plenty of exercises, and the vocabulary used is both practical and up-to-date (see the Introduction for notes concerning

modern Norwegian). Often, in addition to testing a grammatical point, an exercise will cover a particular topic, for example: Exercise 34 weather, Exercise 39 booking a hotel room, Exercise 54 holidays. The conversational drills which round off each chapter introduce colloquial and idiomatic turns of speech as well as constructions already explained.

Ideally, you should spend about an hour a day on your work (slightly less, maybe, if you do not use the audio cassettes), although there is no hard and fast rule on this. Do as much as you feel capable of doing; if you have no special aptitude for language-learning, there is no point in forcing yourself beyond your daily capacity to assimilate new material. It is much better to learn a little at a time, and to learn that thoroughly.

Before beginning a new section or chapter, always spend ten minutes revising what you learnt the day before. When studying the chapters, first read each rule or numbered section carefully and re-read it to ensure that you have fully understood the grammar, then translate the following exercise(s) by writing down the answers. Check these by referring to the Key at the back of the book; if you have made too many mistakes, go back over the instruction before attempting the same questions again. After you have listened to the Conversations, read them aloud and see how closely you can imitate the voices on the recording.

When the course is completed, you should have a good understanding of the language – more than sufficient for general holiday or business purposes, and enough to lead quickly into an examination syllabus if this is your eventual aim. Remember that it is important to continue expanding your vocabulary through reading, listening to the radio and, best of all, through visiting the country.

We hope you will enjoy *Norwegian in Three Months*, and we wish you success with your studies.

## Contents

<i>Introduction</i>	7	<i>Chapter 5</i>	72
<i>Pronunciation</i>	8	The past tense of weak verbs The past tense of strong verbs Adverbs Word order Ordinal numbers Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<i>Chapter 1</i>	17		
Articles and nouns Plural of nouns Subject pronouns Å være ('to be') and å ha ('to have') Vocabulary, exercises & conversation			
<i>Chapter 2</i>	29	<i>Chapter 6</i>	87
The genitive Adjectives Article used with adjectives Infinitive and present tense Questions and answers Vocabulary, exercises & conversation		The part participle The perfect tense Rehearsing the verb More irregular verbs Comparison of adverbs More about adverbs Seasons Months and dates Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<i>Chapter 3</i>	43	<i>Chapter 7</i>	103
The imperative More about questions More about negatives Demonstratives The numbers 1 to 100 Vocabulary, exercises & conversation		The pluperfect Verbs conjugated with være Prepositions Det er ('there is') Indefinite pronouns More about numbers The weather Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<i>Chapter 4</i>	56	<i>Chapter 8</i>	115
Possessive adjectives Possessive pronouns More about adjectives Comparison of adjectives Object forms of the personal pronouns Time Vocabulary, exercises & conversation		The future tense Reflexive verbs The relative pronoun More about comparison Co-ordinating conjunctions Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	

<i>Chapter 9</i>	129	<i>Chapter 12</i>	171
More about conjunctions		More about prepositions	
More about word order		The past participle used as	
The conditional tense		an adjective	
More about 'if' clauses		Colloquial speech	
'That' clauses		Greetings and congratulations	
Countries and nationalities		Vocabulary, exercises	
I and <i>på</i> with geographical		& conversation	
names			
Vocabulary, exercises		<i>Key to exercises</i>	186
& conversation			
<i>Chapter 10</i>	146	<i>Appendix</i>	198
The passive voice		Norwegian spelling	
Active verbs with a passive		<i>Mini-dictionary</i>	200
form		English-Norwegian	
The present participle		Norwegian-English	
Compound words			
More about <i>i</i> and <i>på</i>		<i>Index</i>	230
The use of <i>om</i>			
Vocabulary, exercises			
& conversation			
<i>Chapter 11</i>	161		
More expressions of time			
For <i>d</i> ('in order to')			
More about <i>det</i>			
<i>Det</i> as a preliminary subject			
The verbs <i>ligge</i> , <i>sitte</i> , <i>stå</i>			
and <i>gå</i>			
Vocabulary, exercises			
& conversation			

## Introduction

### The language situation in Norway

Norway has two official written languages. But so has Belgium – and Switzerland even has four. However, their languages belong to different nationalities, namely Dutch and French in Belgium, and German, French, Italian and Rhaeto-Romanic in Switzerland. What makes the language situation in Norway so special is that this country has two written languages which are both Norwegian: **Bokmål** (Book Standard) and **Nynorsk** (New Norwegian). But this does not mean that the English student has to learn both languages: first of all, because the differences between the two are not very significant, even if they are vital to the adherents on both sides, and secondly because, with an adequate knowledge of Bokmål, you will be able to understand what the great majority of Norwegians say – and you will be understood by people throughout the country. In addition to this most newspapers and three quarters of all programmes on the NRK (Norwegian Broadcasting Corporation) accord with the Bokmål standard, and more than 80% of the pupils in Norwegian schools have Bokmål as their main language. It should be noted, however, that the official Bokmål orthography offers some freedom of choice between different spellings of the same word. This is not as confusing as it may sound. In most cases there is a choice between one traditional or 'moderate' norm and one 'radical' norm (more like the Nynorsk norm).

### The language of this course

For the English student there is no need to bother about different norms or standards of Norwegian. In this course we have chosen a moderate Bokmål norm acceptable to most Norwegians. Only in a few cases have we included alternative forms used in colloquial Norwegian and in the media.

# Pronunciation

The pronunciation and intonation of the Norwegian language are rather different from English. In this course we have simplified things for you by using Hugo's system of imitated pronunciation in the early chapters. By means of this, you will be able to acquire a pronunciation which is accurate enough to make yourself understood. Naturally, if you wish to hear and learn perfect pronunciation, you should use the cassette recordings which we have produced to accompany the course. These will allow you to hear the words and phrases as you follow them in the book.

Whether you use the tape recordings or not, you should read through the following rules and advice on Norwegian pronunciation. But there is no need to learn the rules by heart; just return to them at frequent intervals, and you will soon become familiar with them. Although Norwegian spelling may seem complicated, it is more regular than that of English, so you can generally tell from the written form of a word how it is pronounced. Some guidelines on Norwegian spelling are given in the Appendix.

In the meantime, you can start at Chapter 1 and rely on our imitated pronunciation. But note that there is hardly a single sound in English that corresponds exactly to any sound in Norwegian. So try right from the start to get as close as possible to the Norwegian sounds as they are described on the following pages.

## Short and long vowels and consonants

In Norwegian both vowels and consonants can be either short or long. All stressed syllables (see page 14) must contain either a long vowel sound or a long consonant sound. According to the general spelling rule, a long vowel

is usually followed by a short (single) consonant: **tak** 'ceiling', and a short vowel by a long consonant (double letter or combination of two or more letters): **takk** 'thanks', **bank** 'bank'. A stressed final vowel is always long: **se** 'see'. English speakers tend to turn the long vowels into diphthongs, because this is what usually happens in English (e.g. in 'boat', 'say'). Resist the temptation to do this!

## The imitated pronunciation

In the first five chapters of this course, at the end of each section where new words are introduced, the imitated pronunciation is given, showing how the Norwegian words are pronounced. As far as possible, the pronunciation of the Norwegian is rendered as if each syllable formed part of an English word. The system of imitated pronunciation is explained below in the sections on the pronunciation of vowels, diphthongs and consonants. Note that we use a colon (:) to indicate the long version of most Norwegian vowels.

## Pronunciation of vowels

<i>Norwegian letter</i>	<i>Imitated pronunciation</i>
a	can be either short or long. When long, it is pronounced like the 'a' in English 'father' or 'half'; <b>hat</b> 'hatred'. The short version of the same sound has no exact equivalent in English but is almost like the 'u' of 'hut': <b>hatt</b> 'hat'. ah: ah
e	in a stressed syllable is usually pronounced, in its short version, like the 'e' in English 'pen': <b>penn</b> 'pen'. The equivalent longer vowel is similar to the 'ai' in English 'fair', but it is a single pure vowel sound, not a diphthong: <b>pen</b> 'beautiful'. e: e

Norwegian  
letter

*Imitated  
pronunciation*

- e before r is sometimes pronounced like an English 'a'. The long version is as in 'glad': **her** 'here'. The short version is as in 'mat': **berg** 'mountain'.
- e in an unstressed syllable (often following a stressed syllable) is pronounced like the 'e' sound in English 'the', 'father' or 'garden': **gate** 'street', **sitte** 'sit'. When a word ends in e the final e is almost always pronounced in this way.
- i can again be either long, like 'ee' in English 'week': **bil** 'car' or short, like the 'i' in English 'sit' or 'in': **bilde** 'picture'.
- o is usually pronounced like the English 'oo' but with the lips more rounded. The long version is very long, like English 'moon' or 'blue': **bok** 'book'. The short version is as in 'took' or 'full': **kost** 'brush'.
- ø in some words is pronounced like the 'aw' in English 'saw': **foretrekke** 'prefer'. The short version of this vowel is similar to the English 'o' in 'stop': **stopp** 'stop'.
- u has no equivalent in English. It is similar to the 'oo' sound, but pronounced with more protruded lips, giving a less rounded sound (something like English 'u' in 'pure' but without the 'y' sound). It can be long as in **hus** 'house', or short as in **buss** 'bus'. (Don't pronounce it like the southern English 'u' in 'butter'!).
- y is pronounced like the German 'ü' in Lübeck or the French 'u' in 'tu' and 'lune', with very tight, protruded lips. (Take care not to pronounce it like an English 'oo'). It can be long as in **lys** 'light', or short as in **hytte** 'hut'.

a:

e

ee

oo:

aw

o

u:

u

ü:

Norwegian  
letter

*Imitated  
pronunciation*

- æ is usually pronounced in the same way as the Norwegian e before r; that is, like the 'a' in 'glad' (long): **være** 'to be', or like the 'a' in 'mat' (short): **vært** 'been'.

a:

ö:

aw

o

- å in some words is pronounced like 'aw' (long): **båt** 'boat' or in other words like 'o' in 'stop' (short): **åtte** 'eight'.

## Pronunciation of diphthongs

Norwegian has six diphthongs (i.e. combinations of two vowel sounds in a single syllable). They are au, ei, øy, ai, oi, ui, of which the last three occur in only very few words. The first sound in these diphthongs is shorter and the second longer than in the English diphthongs.

Norwegian  
letter

*Imitated  
pronunciation*

- au consists of a first sound pronounced like the 'a' in English 'glad' and a second like the sound described above for Norwegian u: **sau** 'sheep', **maur** 'ant'.

au

- ei is spelt in two ways, and is pronounced eg in a similar way to 'ay' in English 'day', but the first sound is more like the 'a' in 'glad': **nei** 'no', **meg** 'me', **stein** 'stone'.

ay

- øy is also spelt in two ways. It consists of a eg first sound like 'er' and a second sound like the 'y' in English 'year': **øy** 'island', **døgn** '24 hours', **røyk** 'smoke'.

øy

*Norwegian  
letter*

**ai** is pronounced like the 'i' in English 'fine'  
or the 'y' in 'my': *mai* 'May', *hai* 'shark'.

*Imitated  
pronunciation*

y

## Pronunciation of consonants

The pronunciation of the Norwegian consonants is in most cases very similar to that of their English counterparts. But some essential differences should be observed. Watch out for the following.

*Norwegian  
letter*

**g** is usually like the 'g' in English 'good'  
never like the 'g' in 'general': *glad* 'glad'.

*Imitated  
pronunciation*

g

**g** before *ei*, *i* and *y*, however, is pronounced like the Norwegian *j*; that is, like the 'y' in English 'yes': *geit* 'goat', *å gi* 'to give', *gyllen* 'golden'.

y

**j** is pronounced, as mentioned above, like the English 'y' in 'yes': *fjord* 'fjord'. It never sounds like the English 'j' in 'join'.

y

**ng** is always pronounced as in English 'song'  
or 'singer', never as in 'hunger' or 'finger';  
that is, there is no separate 'g' sound:  
*engelsk*, 'English'.

ng

**r** is always pronounced, unlike the 'r' in southern English (e.g. in 'for', 'cart'). It is rolled, like a Scots 'r', and similarly to an Italian one, but with less prominence:  
*berg* 'mountain'.

r

*Imitated  
pronunciation*

y

### Long consonants

As we have already mentioned (page 8) Norwegian has not only long vowels, but also long consonants (indicated by double letters or a combinations of two or more letters). Take care to linger a little more on the long consonants, particularly in words of more than one syllable, for example in: *ponni* 'pony', *stille* 'still'. In English we don't usually linger on double letters like this, except in combinations of two words, such as the 'nn' in 'pine-needle' or the 'll' in 'still-life'.

### Silent consonants

*Norwegian  
letter*

**d** is silent:  
after *r*: *bord* 'table', *fjord* 'fjord'  
after *l* or *n*: *kveld* 'evening', *holde* 'hold'  
after a long vowel: *glad* 'glad', *god* 'good'.  
But *d* is pronounced in *Gud* 'God'.

*Imitated  
pronunciation*

**g** is silent:  
before *j*: *gjøre* 'do', *gjemme* 'hide', *igjen*  
'again'  
in words ending in -ig: *ferdig* 'ready'  
in some other words, e.g.: *morgen* 'morning',  
*folge* 'follow'.

**h** is silent before *j* and *v*: *hjelp* 'help', *hvor* 'where'.

**t** is silent in the definite form of neuter nouns:  
*landet* 'the country', and also in the word *det* 'it'.

**v** is usually silent at the end of a word after *l*, as in  
*halv* 'half', *tolv* 'twelve', *selv* 'self', *sølv* 'silver'.  
But it is pronounced in *elv* 'river'.

### k before a consonant

**k** before a consonant must always be pronounced,  
as in *kvinne* 'woman', *krone* 'crown'. Note that **k**  
it is always pronounced before *n*, unlike in  
English: *kniv* 'knife', *kne* 'knee'.

Norwegian  
letter

Imitated  
pronunciation

The kj sound

The **kj** sound is a slightly guttural sound, pronounced like the German 'ch' in 'ich' (less guttural than the 'ch' in Scottish 'loch') or a strongly aspirated 'h' in English 'huge'. It is written in three different ways.

- |           |   |    |
|-----------|---|----|
| <b>kj</b> | as in: <b>kjær</b> 'dear', <b>kjøre</b> 'drive'   | kh |
| <b>k</b>  | before ei, i, and y, as in: <b>keivhendt</b><br>'left-handed', <b>kilo</b> 'kilo', <b>kyst</b> 'coast'. |    |
| <b>tj</b> | as in <b>tjern</b> 'small lake, tarn', <b>tjære</b> 'tar'.  |    |

The sj sound

This sound is pronounced like 'sh' in English 'shall'. In words of Norwegian origin it is written in three different ways.

- |            |  |    |
|------------|--|----|
| <b>sj</b>  | as in <b>sjeldent</b> 'seldom', <b>sjø</b> 'sea'   | sh |
| <b>skj</b> | as in: <b>skjegg</b> 'beard', <b>skjorte</b> 'shirt'   |    |
| <b>sk</b>  | before ei, i, and y as in: <b>skeie ut</b> 'to go to the bad', <b>skip</b> 'ship', <b>sky</b> 'cloud'. |    |

In foreign words the **sj** sound may be written **sch**: schaefer 'alsatian'; **sh**: sherry; **ch**: champion; **g**: giro, **j**: journalist. In all these words it is pronounced 'sh'.

## Stress, rhythm and tone

*Stress and rhythm*

In words of Norwegian (Germanic) origin the stress usually falls on the first syllable, which means that this syllable is said louder, with more emphasis. Examples: **gate** 'street', **kaste** 'throw'. In words borrowed from other languages the stress is often on the last syllable, as in **dusin** 'dozen', **tobakk** 'tobacco', **trykkeri** 'printing works'.

Prefixes of foreign origin (e.g. **be-**, **er-**, **ge-**) are not stressed, as in: **betale** 'pay', **erklære** 'declare', **gevær** 'rifle, gun'. In words with other prefixes, mainly prepositions (**av**, **fra**, **mot**,

**opp**, **ned** etc.), the stress usually falls on the first syllable, as in: **avgjøre** 'decide', **frata** 'deprive of', **motstand** 'resistance', **nedtrykt** 'depressed'.

Note that suffixes (-else, -ing, -ling, -ig, -lig, etc.) often transfer the stress from the first syllable to the syllable preceding the suffix, as in: **tillatelse** 'permission', **underholdning** 'entertainment', **alvorlig** 'serious'.

In the imitated pronunciation (following each section of the first five chapters) the stress is indicated by an accent mark ('') following the stressed syllable. But this indication is only based on the pronunciation of each word when spoken separately. When words are used in continuous speech, the stress will vary with the rhythm of the sentence. Norwegian sentences often have a trochaic (strong-weak-strong-weak) pattern, as in:

**Ja, vi elsker dette landet!** Yes, we love this country!  
**Kom og sett deg her ved bordet!** Come and sit down at the table!  
**Jeg må gå og lese lekser.** I must go and do my homework.  
**Er du ikke ferdig ennå?** Haven't you finished yet?

In rapid everyday speech, however, the rhythm will vary a lot more, according to the emphasis given to certain words and to the intonation of the whole sentence.

*Tone*

In Norwegian words the stress is closely linked with tone. This can easily be shown in the pronunciation of two homophonic words (different words which sound alike), such as **løvet** 'the foliage' and **love** 'lion'. In both words the stress is on the first syllable, but they are pronounced with a different melody or tone. **Løvet** starts on a fairly low tone and then rises (single tone).

**Love** starts on a medium note and then falls a little before it rises (double tone). This is shown in musical notation in the following illustration.



Note that this description of the two different tones (single tone in **løvet** and double tone in **løve**) applies to the pronunciation in Eastern Norway, but most Norwegians have a kind of rising and falling tone which gives their speech a singing intonation.

## The Norwegian alphabet

A (ah:)	I (ee)	Q (ku:)	Y (ü:)
B (be:)	J (yod)	R (ar)	Z (set)
C (se:)	K (kaw)	S (es)	Æ (a:)
D (de:)	L (el)	T (te:)	Ø (ö:)
E (e:)	M (em)	U (u:)	Å (aw)
F (ef)	N (en)	V (ve:)	
G (ge)	O (oo)	W (doob'-belt-ve:)	
H (haw)	P (pe:)	X (eks)	

# Chapter 1

In this first chapter you will meet some of the basic building blocks of Norwegian. It covers:

- the indefinite and definite articles ('a/an' and 'the')
- nouns – names for people and things – and the concept of gender
- the subject pronouns ('I', 'you', etc.)
- two important verbs: 'to be' and 'to have'

## 1 Articles and nouns

In Norwegian, nouns (words for people, things etc.) can be masculine, feminine or neuter, and articles must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer. For your purposes, however, it is sufficient to distinguish between only two genders: *common gender* (**en**-words – comprising masculine and feminine nouns) and *neuter gender* (**et**-words).

The indefinite article – in English 'a' – stands *before* the noun and is expressed by **en** (*common gender*) and **et** (*neuter gender*).

**en koffert** a suitcase  
**en lommebok\*** a wallet  
**et pass** a passport

\* This is a feminine noun. Instead of **en**, **ei** is sometimes used as the feminine indefinite article in colloquial speech and always in Nynorsk: **ei lommebok**.

The definite article – in English ‘the’ – is placed *after* the noun in Norwegian and forms one word with it. It is expressed by **-en** (*common gender*) and **-et** (*neuter gender*):

kofferten the suitcase  
lommeboken\* the wallet  
passet the passport

\* In feminine nouns **-a** is often used instead of **-en** in colloquial speech and always in Nynorsk: **lommeboka**.

Some feminine nouns nearly always appear with an **-a** ending in the definite form singular: **en** (or **ei**) **bygd** – **bygda** (the rural district); **en** (**ei**) **hytte** – **hytta** (the hut); **en** (**ei**) **jente** – **jenta** (the girl); **en** (**ei**) **geit** – **geita** (the goat); **en** (**ei**) **ku** – **kua** (the cow); etc.

Nouns of two or more syllables ending in an unstressed **-e** (**e**) only add **-n** and **-t** to the indefinite forms:

**en gate** a street  
**et bilde** a picture

**gaten** the street  
**bildet** the picture

But words ending in stressed **-e** add **-en** or **-et**:

**et kne** a knee  
**en kafé** a café

**kneet** the knee  
**kaféen** the café

There are rules that can help to determine the gender of Norwegian nouns, but as these are complicated, the only practical way to learn whether a noun is common gender or neuter is by constant imitation and practice.

Note that the indefinite article is dropped in statements like:

Han er rørlegger. He is a plumber.  
De har ikke telefon. They don't have a telephone.  
Han arbeider på fabrikk. He works in a factory.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION **e:n** **koof'-fert**, **e:n** **loom'-me'-boo:k**  
**ei** **pahs**; **koof'-fer-ten**, **loom'-me-boo:-ken**, **pahs'-se**; **en** (**ay**) **bügd**,  
**büg'-dah**; **en** **hüt'-te**, **hüt'-ah**; **en** **yen'-te**, **yen'-tah**; **en** **yayt**, **yay'-tah**; **en** **ku**; **ku'-ah**; **en** **gah'-te**, **gah'-ten**; **et** **bil'-de**, **bil'-de**; **et** **kne**; **kne'-e**, **en** **kah-fe'**, **kah-fe'-en**, **hahn** **ar** **rör'-leg-ger**; **dee hahr** **ik'-ke te-le-foo:n'**; **hahn** **ahr'-bay-der** **paw fah-brik'**

## Exercise 1

A Put the appropriate indefinite article before the following nouns:

- 1 ... **koffert**
- 2 ... **lommebok**
- 3 ... **pass**
- 4 ... **gate**
- 5 ... **bilde**
- 6 ... **stasjon** (*common gender*) (station)
- 7 ... **rute** (*common gender*) (route)
- 8 ... **tog** (*neuter gender*) (train)
- 9 ... **buss** (*common gender*) (bus)
- 10 ... **fly** (*neuter gender*) (aeroplane)

B Repeat the above exercise using the definite article.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION (6) **stah-shoo:n'** (7) **ru':-te** (8) **tawg**  
(9) **bus** (10) **flu:**

## 2A Plural of nouns: indefinite form

The plural of nouns of common gender is formed by adding **-er** to the singular:

**en stol** a chair  
**en seng** a bed

**stoler** chairs  
**senger** beds

en vegg a wall  
en dør a door

vegger walls  
dører doors

Neuter nouns of one syllable usually remain unchanged in the plural:

et bord a table  
et hus a house  
et lys a light  
et egg an egg

bord tables  
hus houses  
lys lights  
egg eggs

Neuter nouns of more than one syllable can also remain unchanged in the plural, but usually add -er to the singular:

et vindu a window  
et fotografi a photograph

vinduer windows  
fotografier photographs

Nouns of both genders ending in an unstressed -e (*e*) only add -r in the plural:

en skole a school  
en kvinne a woman  
et teppe a carpet  
et eple an apple

skoler schools  
kvinner women  
tepper carpets  
epler apples

But those ending in a stressed -e add -er:

en bre a glacier  
en kafé a cafe

breer glaciers  
kaféer cafés

Note that some nouns change their stem vowel in the plural, such as:

en tann a tooth  
en natt a night  
en bok a book  
en bonde a farmer  
en ku a cow  
en hånd a hand

tenner teeth  
netter nights  
bøker books  
bønder farmers  
kyr or kuer cows  
hender hands

Note also the following nouns with other irregularities in addition to the change of vowel:

en far a father  
en mor a mother  
en datter a daughter  
et tre a tree  
en mann a man

fedre fathers  
modre mothers  
døtre daughters  
trær trees  
menn men

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION stool; stoo'-ler; seng, seng'-er; veg, veg'-ger; dö:r, dö'-ter; boo:r, boor; hus, hu:s; lü:s, lü:s; eg, eg; vin'-du, vin'-du-er; foo-too-grah-fee', foo-too-grah-fee'-er; skoo':le, skoo':-ler; kvin'-ne, kvin'-ner; tep'-pe, tep'-per; ep'-le, ep'-ler; bre, bre'-er; kah-fe', kah-fe'-er; tahn, ten'-ner; naht, net'-ter; boo:k, bö':ker; ku, khú:r, ku':-er; hon, hen'-ner; fah:r, fe':-dre; moor, mó':dr; daht'-ter, dö:t'-re; tre, trar; mahñ, men

## Exercise 2

Give the plural of the following words:

- |                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| 1 stol                   | 7 teppe      |
| 2 seng                   | 8 bok        |
| 3 bord                   | 9 hånd       |
| 4 hus                    | 10 mor       |
| 5 vindu                  | 11 tre       |
| 6 skole                  | 12 mann      |
| 13 by (common gender)    | (city, town) |
| 14 trapp (common gender) | (staircase)  |
| 15 fjell (neuter gender) | (mountain)   |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION (13) bü: (14) trahp (15) fyel

## 2B Plural of nouns: definite form

In the plural the definite article 'the' is expressed by -ene added to the singular form of the noun:

stol chair	stolene the chairs
seng bed	sengene the beds
bord table	bordene* the tables
hus house	husene* the houses

\* In nouns of neuter gender the definite article -a is sometimes used instead of -ene in colloquial Bokmål (and always in Nynorsk). Some neutrals nearly always appear in the -a form: et ben (a leg) – bona (the legs); et barn (a child) – barna (the children).

Nouns of two or more syllables ending in an unstressed -e only add -ne in the definite form of the plural:

skole school

kvinne woman

eple apple

But: **breene** (the glaciers), **kaféene** (the cafés).

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION stoo'-le-ne, seng'-e-ne, boo:-re-ne, hu:-se-ne; be:n, be:-nah; bah:rn, bah:r'-nah; scoo:-le-ne, kvin'-ne-ne, ep'-le-ne; bre:-e-ne, kah-fe:-e-ne

### Exercise 3

Give the following nouns in the indefinite and definite forms, in both singular and plural (model answer: *en vegg – veggene – vegger – veggene*):

1 stol            6 teppe

2 seng            7 skole

3 bord            8 hånd

4 hus            9 mor

5 vindu            10 tre

11 vei (*common gender*) (road)

12 bil (*common gender*) (car)

13 lampe (*common gender*) (lamp)

14 gulv (*neuter gender*) (floor)

15 tak (*neuter gender*) (ceiling)

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION (11) vay (12) beel (13) lahm'-pe  
(14) gulv (15) tah:k

### 3 Subject pronouns

#### Singular

jeg	I
du	you ( <i>familiar</i> )
De	you ( <i>formal</i> )
han	he
hun	she
den	( <i>common</i> ) it
det	( <i>neuter</i> ) it

#### Plural

vi	we
dere	you ( <i>familiar</i> )
Dere	you ( <i>formal</i> )
de	they

The subject pronoun **De** is used when talking to strangers or people you do not know well, especially elderly persons. But it is becoming less common, and many people, especially teenagers, use **du** to each other even on their first meeting.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION yay, du:, dee, hahn, hun, den, de:, vee, de:-re, dee

### 4 Å være ('to be') and å ha ('to have')

Å være and å ha have the same form in all persons in the singular and in the plural:

#### Present tense

jeg er	I am	jeg har	I have
du/De er	you are	du/De har	you have
han er	he is	han har	he has
hun er	she is	hun har	she has
den/det er	it is	den/det har	it has
vi er	we are	vi har	we have
dere/Dere er	you are	dere/Dere har	you have
de er	they are	de har	they have

## Vocabulary

Study these words:

spørsmålet	the question
og	and
svaret	the answer
hva	what
ditt (Deres)	your
navnet	the name
Hva heter du (De)?	What's your name?
mitt	my
amerikansk	American
nei	no
engelsk	English
noen	any
vennen	the friend
i	in
Norge	Norway
Ja, det har jeg.	Yes, I have.
hvor	where
konen	the wife
din (Deres) kone	your wife
butikken	the shop
to	two
også	too
Ja, det er de.	Yes, they are.
hvor gammel (sing.: gammel)	how old
tolv	twelve
fjorten	fourteen
året	the year

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION yay a:r; du: a:r, hahn a:r, hun a:r, den a:r, de: a:r, vee a:r, de:-re a:r, dee a:r; yay hah:r, du: hah:r, hahn hah:r, hun hah:r, den hah:r, de: hah:r, vee hah:r, de:-re hah:r, dee hah:r; spôrs'-maw-læ; aw; svah'-re; vah; dit (de:-res); nahv'-ne; vah; he:-ter du: (dee); mit; ah-me-ri-kahnsk'; nay; eng'-elsk; noo'-en; ven'-nen; ee; nor'-ge; yah: de: hah:r yay; voor; koo':-nen; deen (de:-res) koo':-ne; bu-tik'-ken; too; os'-so; yah: de: ar dee; voor gahm'-le; tol; fyoor'-ten; aw'-re

## Exercise 4

Questions and answers. Translate:

- 1 What's your name?
- 2 My name's Anthony McLeod.
- 3 Are you American?
- 4 No, I'm English.
- 5 Have you any friends in Norway?
- 6 Yes, I have.
- 7 Where's your wife?
- 8 She's in the shop.
- 9 Have you any children?
- 10 Yes, we have two children.
- 11 Are they in Norway too?
- 12 Yes, they are.
- 13 How old are they?
- 14 They are twelve and fourteen years old.

## Vocabulary

samtalen	the conversation
på vei(en)	on the way
til	to
jernbanestasjonen	the railway station
unnskyld (meg)	excuse me
hvordan	how
hvordan kommer jeg?	how do I get?
bare	just
å gå over	to cross
forget	the square

å ta	to take
den første	the first
til venstre	on your left
så	then
går De	you go
rett frem	straight on
ned	down
trafikklysene	the traffic lights
å krysse	to cross
du ser	you'll see
like	just
foran	in front of
tror De?	do you think?
kan	can
å huske	to remember
det	that
ja da	oh yes
mange takk	thank you very much
forresten	by the way
jeg skal til	I'm on my way to
selv	myself (himself, herself etc.)
virkelig	really
å følge	to go with
hvis	if
å ønske	to wish
snilt (av)	kind (of)
min familie	my family
venter på meg	is waiting for me
på stasjonen	at the station
jeg gikk (for å)	I went (to)
gjøre noen innkjøp	do some shopping
men	but
jeg gikk meg vill	I got lost
min mann	my husband
billettene	the tickets
jeg har det travelt	I'm in a hurry
vårt tog	our train
å gå	to leave
om en halv time	in half an hour
ikke så langt	not that far
vi skal	we'll
der	there

ti  
minuttet

ten  
the minute

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION sahm'-tah-lən; paw vay; til; ya:m'-bah-ne-stah-shoo:-nen; un-shüll; voor'dahn kom'-mer yay; bah:-re; aw gaw aw-ver; tor'-ge; aw tah; den förs'-te; til ven'-stre; saw; gawr dee; ret frem; ne:d; trah-fik'-lü-se-ne; aw krüs'-se; du: se:r; lee'-ke; fo'-rahn; troor dee; kahn; aw hus'-ke; de; yah':-dah; mahng'-e tahlk; for-res'-ten; yay skahl til; sel; vir'-ke-lee; aw fôl'-le; vis; aw öns'-ke; snilt (ah:v); meen fah-mee'-lye; ven'-ter paw may; paw stah-shoo:-nen; yay yik (for aw); yo':-re noo':-en in'-khöp; men; yay yik may vil; meen mahn; bil-let'-te-ne; yay hahr de; trah:-vælt; vort tawg; aw gaw; om en hahl tee'-me; ik'-ke saw lahngt; vee skahl; da:r; tee; mi-nut'-te

## Conversation

På vei til jernbanestasjonen  
*On the way to the railway station*

Janice McLeod Unnskyld, hvordan kommer jeg til jernbanestasjonen?  
*Excuse me, how do I get to the railway station?*

Sverre Holm Bare gå over torget og ta den første gaten til venstre. Så går De rett frem ned til trafikklysene, krysser gaten, og De ser jernbanestasjonen like foran Dem.

Tror De De kan huske det?  
*Just cross the square and take the first street on your left. Then you go straight on down to the traffic lights, cross the street and you'll see the railway station just in front of you. Do you think you'll remember that?*

Janice McLeod Ja da, mange takk.  
*Oh yes, thank you very much.*



Sverre Holm **Forresten, jeg skal til jernbanestasjonen selv.**  
*By the way, I'm on my way to the railway station myself.*

Janice McLeod **Skal De virkelig det?**  
*Are you really?*

Sverre Holm **Ja, og jeg vil følge Dem hvis De ønsker.  
Jeg heter Sverre Holm.**  
*Yes, and I'll go with you if you wish.  
My name is Sverre Holm.*

Janice McLeod **Det er meget snilt av Dem, herr Holm.  
Mitt navn er Janice McLeod. Min familie venter på meg på stasjonen. Jeg gikk for å gjøre noen innkjøp i Oslo, men jeg gikk meg vill. Min mann har våre kofferter og billetter. Og passene! Jeg har det travelt!  
Toget vårt går om en halv time.**  
*That's very kind of you, Mr Holm. My name's Janice McLeod. My family is waiting for me at the station. I went to do some shopping in Oslo, but I got lost. My husband's got our suitcases and our tickets. And the passports! I'm in a hurry! Our train leaves in half an hour.*

Sverre Holm **Å, det er ikke så langt. Vi skal være der om ti minutter.**  
*Oh, it's not that far. We'll be there in ten minutes.*

## Chapter 2

In this chapter you will learn:

- how to express possession (using the possessive or genitive form) in Norwegian
- how adjectives agree in gender and number with nouns
- the form of the definite article when used with adjectives
- how to form the present tense of most verbs
- how to ask 'yes/no' questions
- ... and how to answer them

### 5 The genitive

In Norwegian, nouns in the possessive (or genitive) form add -s, without an apostrophe as in English:

naboens hage	the neighbour's garden
guttens lærer	the boy's teacher
pikenes bror	the girls' brother
barnets mor	the child's mother

Note that the use of the -s genitive is not restricted to nouns which refer to people:

båtens eier	the owner of the boat
Norges fjorder	the fjords of Norway
landets grenser	the borders of the country
myndighetenes ansvar	the responsibility of the authorities

In colloquial Norwegian, however, the genitive is often expressed by a preposition (til, av):

hagen til naboen
læreren til gutten
moren til barnet
eieren av båten

Compound nouns are also used to replace the -s genitive:

båteieren (the boat owner) = båtens eier  
landegrensene (the national boundaries) = landets grenser

## Vocabulary

avisen	the newspaper
søsteren	the sister
foreldrene	the parents
kunden	the customer
vesken, posen	the bag
farten	the speed
fargen	the colour
blomsten	the flower
hjørnet	the corner

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION nah: '-boo-ens hah'-ge; gut'-tens la'-rer; pee'-ke-nes broox; bahr'-nes moo;r; baw'-tens ay'-er; nor'-ges fyoo'-rer; lahn'-nes gren'-ser; mün'-dee-he:-te'-nes aln'-svah:r; hah'-gen til nah'-boo-en; la: '-re-ren til gut'-ten; moo'-ren til bah:r'-ne; ay'-e-ren alv baw'-ten; bawt-ay-e-ren; lahn'-ne-gren-se-ne; ah-vee'-sen; sös'-w-ren; for-el'-dre-ne; kun'-den; ves'-ken, poo'-sen; fahr'-ten; fahr'-gen; blom-sten; yör'-ne

## Exercise 5

Translate, using the -s genitive:

- 1 the man's newspaper
- 2 the sister's friend
- 3 the child's parents
- 4 the customers' bags
- 5 the name of the town
- 6 the speed of the train

7 the colours of the flowers

8 the corner of the house

## 6 Adjectives

Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer. They add no ending when used with common gender singular nouns. With neuter gender singular nouns they add a -t, and in the plural of both genders an -e: god godt gode (good).

en brun genser	a brown sweater
et brunt skjerf	a brown scarf
brune bukser	brown trousers

Bilen er dyr.	The car is expensive.
Huset er dyrt.	The house is expensive.
Kjolene er dyre.	The dresses are expensive.

Some adjectives have irregular forms in the neuter singular and/or the plural.

Adjectives ending in -ig or -lig, or in -t preceded by another consonant, have no additional -t in the neuter singular.

en vanskelig sak	a difficult cause
et feilaktig (riktig) svar	a wrong (right) answer
et farlig veikryss	a dangerous crossroads
en sort kjole	a black dress
et sort skjørt	a black skirt

Adjectives ending in a stressed vowel, such as *fri*, *blå*, add -tt in the neuter singular:

et fritt land a free country      et blått slips a blue tie

Some of these adjectives add -e in the plural, others add no ending:

frie land free countries      blå slips blue ties

Note also the irregular forms of the adjective **liten** 'little', 'small'; the plural is quite different:

en liten hund a little dog  
små barn little children

et lite ekorn a little squirrel  
små ekorn little squirrels

## Vocabulary

lastebilen	the lorry
pakkhuset	the warehouse
varemagasinet	the department store
blusen	the blouse
gul	yellow
rød	red
skoен	the shoe
tynn	thin, light
lang	long
spiss	pointed
lys	fair
håret	the hair
øyet	the eye
øyne(ne)	(the) eyes
haken	the chin
arret	the scar
pannen	the forehead
fregnene	the freckles
nesen	the nose
merkelig	peculiar
hyggelig	pleasant
møtet	the meeting
lett	easy
dagen	the day
kort	short
livet	the life
timen	the hour
ny	new
valget	the election
brå	sudden
stoppet	the stop

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION goo:, got, goo':-e; en bru:hn gen'-ser; et bru:nt sharf, bru':-ne book'-ser; bee'-len ar: dü:r; hu':-se a:z

dü:r; khoo'-le-ne ar: dü:':-re; en vahn'-ske-lee sah:k; et fayl-ahk'-tee (rik'-tee) svahr; et fahr'-lee vay'-krüs; en soort khoo':-le; et soort shört; free; blow; et fri lahns; et blot slips; free'-e lahns; blow slips; en lee'-ten hun; et lee'-te ek'-koorn; smaw bah:rn; smaw ek'-koorn; lahs'-te-bee-leh; pahk'-hu:-se; vahl':-re-mah-gah-see-ne; blu':-sen; gu:l; rö: skoo':-en; tü:n; lahng; spis; li:z; haw'-re; öy'-e; öy'-ne(-ne); hah'-ken; ahr'-re; pahn'-nen; fray'-ne-ne; ne':-sen; mar'-ke-lee; hüh'-ge-lee; mö':-te; let; dah':-gen; kort; lee'-ve; tee'-men; nü:; vahl'-ge; braw; stop'-pe

## Exercise 6

Fill in the correct form of the adjectives in Norwegian:

- 1 en (big) lastebil, et (big) pakhus, (big) varemagasiner
- 2 Blusen er (yellow), slipset er (red), skoene er (black).
- 3 Den [blusen] er (light), det [slipset] er (long), de [skoene] er (pointed).
- 4 Han har (fair) hår, (blue) øyne, en (little) hake, et (little) arr i pannen og (little) freigner på nesen.
- 5 et (peculiar) svar, et (pleasant) møte, et (easy) spørsmål
- 6 Livet er (short), dagen er (short), timene er (short).
- 7 et (new) møte, et (free) valg, et (sudden) stopp

## 7 Article used with adjectives

We have already discussed the definite article -en, -et, -ene which is placed after the noun and forms one word with it (kofferten, passet, stolene). But Norwegian has another definite article placed before the noun (like 'the') in English. This article – den, det, de – is used when the definite form of the noun is preceded by an adjective.

den store byen	the large town
det høye huset	the tall house
de dyre bilene	the expensive cars

The adjectives preceded by **den**, **det** or **de** add **-e** in both genders, singular and plural: **store**, **høye**, **dyre**.

Note particularly the irregular **-e** form of the adjective **liten**:

**den lille hunden**

the little dog

**det lille barnet**

the little child

The **-e** form of the adjective is also used after some other classes of words, such as the demonstratives: **den**, **det**, **de**, 'that', 'that', 'those', and **denne**, **dette**, **disse**, 'this', 'this', 'these' (sec. 13), and the possessive adjectives (sec. 15).

In the examples given above we have a definite article both before and after the noun. This so-called double definite is typical of the Norwegian colloquial language and is especially used in connection with nouns referring to concrete things. In formal speech and in the written language, however, the definite article at the end of the noun can be dropped, particularly with abstract nouns:

**den nye tid**

the new age

**det ufødte liv**

the unborn life

**de gode muligheter**

the good possibilities

## Vocabulary

**undertøyet**

the underwear

**varm**

warm

**klærne**

the clothes

**bondegården**

the farm

**føllet**

the foal

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION den stoo:-'re bū:-'m; de: höy-e hu:-'se; dee dü:-'re bee'-le-ne; den lil'-le hun'-nen; de: lil'-le bahr'-ne; den nü:-'e teed; de: u:-föt-te leev; dee goo'-e mu:-lee-he-ter; un'-ner-töy-e; vahrm; klar'-ne; boon'-ne-gaw-ren; föl'-le

## Exercise 7

*Translate:*

- 1 the brown sweater
- 2 the long underwear
- 3 the warm clothes
- 4 the new lorry
- 5 the big department store
- 6 the dangerous crossroads
- 7 the little farm
- 8 the little foal

## 8 Infinitive and present tense

In Norwegian the infinitive (equivalent of the English 'to' form) of most verbs ends in an unstressed **-e** and is preceded by **å** (*aw*):

<b>å kjøpe</b>	to buy	<b>å pynte (seg)</b>	to turn
<b>å selge</b>	to sell	<b>å foretrekke</b>	to prefer
<b>å bruke</b>	to use	<b>å beskytte</b>	to protect
<b>å trenge</b>	to need	<b>å fryse</b>	to freeze

In some verbs the infinitive ends in a stressed vowel (any vowel except **e** at the end of a word is always stressed):

<b>å ta</b>	to take	<b>å snu</b>	to turn
<b>å kle</b>	to dress	<b>å ble</b>	to bleed
<b>å gli</b>	to slide	<b>å gå</b>	to walk, to go
<b>å bo</b>	to live		

The sign of the infinitive, **å**, is used much in the same way as 'to' in English. Note that when two succeeding infinitives are used in sequence we usually drop the second **å**: **å gi og** (**å**) **ta** 'to give and (to) take'.

Almost all Norwegian verbs form their present tense by adding **-r** to the infinitive. The same form is used in all persons, singular and plural:

jeg	I	read	jeg	I	take
du	you		du	you	
han	he		han	he	
hun	she	reads	hun	she	takes
vi	we		vi	we	
dere	you	read	dere	you	take
de	they		de	they	

NOTE: Norwegian also uses the simple present tense where English would use the continuous tense:

**Han kommer.** He comes or He is coming.

**Han kjøper og selger klær.** He is buying and selling clothes.

## Vocabulary

nødvendig	necessary
å bruke	to wear
om vinteren	in winter
alle	everybody
må	must
å lære	to learn
å lese	to read
å skrive	to write
å ønske	to want
å reise til	to go to
Italia	Italy
i sommer	this summer
å arbeide	to work
meget	very
hardt	hard
å se på	to watch
fjernsynet	the television
hver	every
morgenen	the morning
å reise med bussen	to go by bus
kontoret	the office

om aftenen  
å bli hjemme

in the evening  
to stay at home

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION aw khö:'-pe, sel'-le, bru':-ke, treng'-e, pün'-te (say), faw'-re-trek-ke, be-shüt'-te, frü':-se; aw tah; kle; glee, boo; smu; blö; gaw; aw yee, aw tah; yay, du; hahn, hun, vee, de':-re, dee; le':-ser; tah; hahn kom'-mer; hahn khö'-per aw sel'-ler kla:r; nöd-ven'-dee; aw bru':-ke; om vin'-te-ren; ahl'-le; maw; aw la':-re; aw le':-se; aw skree'-ve; aw ön'-ske; aw ray'-se til; ee-tah'; lyah; ee som'-mer; aw ahr'-bay-de; me':-get; hahrt; aw se; paw; fyä:rn'-sü:-ne; va;r; maw'-re-nen; aw ray'-se me; bus'-sen; koontoo':-re; om ahf'-te-nen; aw blee yem'-me

## Exercise 8

Translate:

- 1 In Norway it's [er det\*] necessary to wear warm clothes in winter.
- 2 Everybody must learn to read and (to) write.
- 3 We want to go to Italy this summer.
- 4 You're working very hard.
- 5 They're watching television.
- 6 She's buying a new dress.
- 7 He lives in Oslo. Every morning he goes [reiser han\*] to the office by bus.
- 8 In the evening he prefers to stay at home.

\* see section 24 on word order – but don't bother to learn it now.

## 9 Questions and answers

In questions the subject (noun or pronoun) is placed after the verb:

**Er din venn engelsk?**  
Is your friend English?

**Snakker de norsk?**  
Do they speak Norwegian?

**Leser du norske aviser?**  
Are you reading Norwegian newspapers?

**Har dere barn?**  
Do you have children? / Have you any children?

'Not' in negative answers is expressed by **ikke**:

**Nei, hun/han er ikke engelsk.**  
No, she/he isn't (English).

**Nei, de snakker ikke norsk.**  
No, they don't speak Norwegian.

**Nei, jeg leser ikke norske aviser.**  
No, I'm not reading Norwegian newspapers.

**Nei, vi har ikke barn.**  
No, we don't have children.

Note that there is no Norwegian word corresponding to the English 'do' and 'don't' in questions and negative sentences.

Questions can be either affirmative: **Snakker de norsk?** or negative: **Snakker de ikke norsk?** (Don't they speak Norwegian?).

'Yes' in affirmative answers to affirmative questions is expressed by **ja**:

**Snakker de norsk ? Ja, de snakker norsk.**  
Do they speak Norwegian? Yes, they speak Norwegian.

'Yes' in affirmative answers to negative questions is expressed by **jo** (the equivalent of the French 'si'):

**Snakker de ikke norsk? Jo, de snakker norsk.**  
Don't they speak Norwegian? Yes, they do speak Norwegian.

## Vocabulary

kaldt	cold
å bli	to stay
å like	to like
å gå på ski	skiing
sammen med	with
har de (fått)?	have they got?

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION a:r deen ven eng'-elsk; snah'-ker dee norsk; le':-ser du: nor'-ske ah-vee'-ser; hahr: de':-re bah:rn; nay hun/hahn a:r ik'-ke eng'-elsk; nay dee snah'-ker ik'-ke norsk; nay yay le':-ser ik'-ke nors'-ke ah-vee'-ser; nay vee hahr: ik'-ke bah:rn; yah; yoo;; kahl; aw blee; aw lee'-ke; aw gaw paw shee; sahm'-men me;; hahr: dee (fot)

## Exercise 9

A *Translate:*

- 1 Is it cold in Norway in winter?
- 2 Do you need warm underwear and a thick sweater?
- 3 Do you want to stay in Oslo?
- 4 Do you like skiing?
- 5 Are your children coming with you?
- 6 Have they got friends here?
- 7 Don't you hear me?

B *Answer the above questions in Norwegian – the first five in the affirmative and the last two in the negative.*

## Vocabulary

hotellet	the hotel
fru	Mrs
herr	Mr
i dag	today
bare bra	just fine
svigerinnen	the sister-in-law
hele	all, whole
heldig	lucky
sikkert	certainly
å ta seg av	to take care of
å vise	to show
rundt i byen	round the town
hva med Dem (deg)?	what about you?
når det gjelder	as far as ... is concerned
tanten	the aunt
tremenningen	the second cousin
mye	a lot
sammentreffet	the coincidence
For et sammentreff!	What a coincidence!
glad	glad
uken	the week
naturfrelst	nature-mad
fotturen	the walking tour
å overlive	to survive
helsen	the health
skogen	the forest
luften	the air
det er helse i skogluften	the forest air is good medicine
jeg må dessverre	I'm sorry to
å forlate	to leave
på gjensyn!	See you later!

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION hoo-tel'-le; fru; ha:r; ee-dah:g'; bah:r'-re brah; svee-ge-rin'-nen; he:l'-le; hel'-dee; sik'-kert; aw tah: say ah:v; aw vee':se; runt ee bii':-en; vah: me: dem (day); nor de: yel'-ler; tahn'-ten; tre:-men-ning-en; mü:;-e; salm'-men-tref-fé; for et sam'-men-tref; glah:; u:'-ken; nah'tur':-frelist; foo:t'-tu:-ren; aw aw'-ver-le-ve; hel'-sen; skoo':-gen; luf'-ten; de ar hel'-se ee skoo:g'. luf'-ten; yay maw des-var'-re; aw for-lah: '-te; paw yen'-sü:n

## Conversation

### Møte på hotellet

*Meeting at the hotel*

Fru Hansen God morgen, herr McLeod! Hvordan står det til i dag?

*Good morning, Mr McLeod! How are you today?*

Herr McLeod Bare bra. Min kone er i byen og handler sammen med sin norske svigerinne. Så jeg har hele formiddagen for meg selv.

*Just fine. My wife is in town shopping with her Norwegian sister-in-law. So I've got the whole morning to myself.*

Fru Hansen De er heldig som har familie i Oslo. De tar seg sikkert av dere og viser dere rundt i byen?

*You're lucky to have family in Oslo. I'm sure they're (lit. They're certainly) taking care of you, showing you round the town?*

Herr McLeod Ja, det gjør de. Og hva med Dem, fru Hansen? Har De familie i Oslo?

*Yes, they are. And what about you, Mrs Hansen? Do you have family in Oslo?*

Fru Hansen Jeg er fra Tromsø. Når det gjelder familie, er alt jeg har i Sør-Norge, en tante på Hamar og en tremenning i Fredrikstad. Men min mann og jeg har noen venner på Bygdøy.

*I'm from Tromsø. As far as family is concerned, all I've got in Southern Norway is an aunt in Hamar and a second cousin in Fredrikstad. But my husband and I have some friends at Bygdøy.*

Herr McLeod For et sammentreff! Min bror og hans familie bor også på Bygdøy.

*What a coincidence! My brother and his family live at Bygdøy too.*



- Fru Hansen Da har de mye å vise dere, Vikingskipene, Folkemuseet, 'Fram' og 'Kon-Tiki' ...  
*Then they have a lot to show you, the Viking ships, the Folk Museum, the 'Fram' and the 'Kon-Tiki' ...*
- Herr McLeod Ja, jeg vet det. Og jeg er glad for at vi har en hel uke i Oslo. Min bror og hans familie er alle sammen naturfrelst. De vil ta oss med på en tur til Nordmarka. Jeg håper jeg overlever det!  
*Yes, I know. And I'm glad we have a whole week in Oslo. My brother and his family are all nature-mad. They want to take us on a walking tour in Nordmarka. I hope I'll survive!*
- Fru Hansen Sikkert! Det er helse i skogluften! – Jeg må dessverre forlate Dem, herr McLeod.  
*Ha det godt!*  
*Certainly! The forest air is good medicine! – Sorry to leave you, Mr McLeod. Have a good time!*
- Herr McLeod Takk i like måte, fru Hansen. På gjensyn!  
*The same to you, Mrs Hansen. See you later!*

## Chapter 3

Chapter 3 introduces:

- the imperative form of the verb, used for giving commands and instructions
- questions with question words ('where?', 'how?' etc.)
- some negative expressions ('never', 'no one', etc.)
- the numbers from 0 to 100

### 10 The imperative

The imperative (command form) has the same form as the stem of the verb, i.e. the infinitive less the -e (in verbs ending in a stressed vowel the imperative has the same form as the infinitive):

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperative</i>
å kjøpe	Kjøp huset! Buy the house!
å selge	Selg aksjene! Sell the shares!
å vente	Vent på meg! Wait for me!
å betale	Betal din gjeld! Pay your debt!
å gå	Gå videre! Go on!

When we tell or ask people not to do something, the word ikke is placed either immediately after or immediately before the imperative:

Kjøp ikke huset!	Don't buy the house!
Ikke kjøp huset!	
Selg ikke aksjene!	Don't sell the shares!
Ikke selg aksjene!	
Vent ikke på meg!	Don't wait for me!
Ikke vent på meg!	

## Vocabulary

hardere	harder
leksjonen, leksen	the lesson
øvelsen	the exercise
å spise	to eat
din aftensmat	your supper
å komme tilbake	to come back
å stanse	to stop
å stå	to stand
stille	still
å se på	to look at
himmelen	the sky

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION khö:p hu'-se; sel ahk'-she-ne; vent paw may; be-tah'l' deen yel; gaw vee'-de-re; ik'-ke; hah'-re-re; lek-shoo':-nen, lek'-sen; ö'-vel-sen; aw spee'-se; deen ahf'-tens-maht; aw kom'-me tilbah'-ke; aw stahn'-se; aw staw; stil'-le; aw se: paw; him'-me-len

## Exercise 10

### A Translate:

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 Work harder!        | 6 Come back!        |
| 2 Read the book!      | 7 Stop the train!   |
| 3 Learn the lesson!   | 8 Take the bus!     |
| 4 Write the exercise! | 9 Stand still!      |
| 5 Eat your supper!    | 10 Look at the sky! |

### B Write the last five sentences in the negative form.

## 11 More about questions

In the previous chapter (sec. 9) you learned about the word order in questions: verb before subject (Snakker de? Do they speak?). To ask questions you also need to know some question words:

hvor?	Hvor er (den) nærmeste kolonialhandel?
where?	Where is the nearest grocer's?
når?	Når stenger forretningene?
when?	When do the shops close?
hvordan?	Hvordan er disse svinekotelettene?
how?	How are these pork chops?
hvem?	Hvem bar først?
who? whom?	Who was first?
hvorför?	Hvem skal jeg spørre?
why?	Whom shall I ask?
hvilken? (common)	Hvorfor er disse tomatene så dyre?
hvilket? (neuter)	Why are these tomatoes so expensive?
hvilke? (plural)	Hvilket av eplene vil De ha?
which? what?	Which of the apples do you want?
hva?	Hvilke epler liker De?
what?	What apples do you like?
hvor mange?	Hva ønsker De?
how many?	What would you like?
hvor mye?	Hvor mange kilo?
how much?	How many kilos?
hvor mye?	Hvor mye koster disse potetene?
how much?	How much are these potatoes?

## Vocabulary

å reise (bort)	to leave
i morgen tidlig	tomorrow morning
å ha det bra	to feel well
det er	that is
min søster	my sister

å se etter	to look for
sin sønn	her son
dette	this
røkelaks	smoked salmon
språket	the language
tysk	German
fransk	French
det kommer på ...	it comes to ...

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION voor a:r (den) na:r-me-sté koo-loo-nyah'l'-hahn-del; nor steng'-er for-ret'-ning-e-ne; voor'-dahn a:r dis'-se svee':-ne-kot-te-let-te-ne; vem vahr:först; vem skahl yay spör'-re; voor'-for a:r dis'-se too-mah':-te-ne saw dü:':-re; vil'-ket ah:v ep'-le-ne vil dee hah; vill'-ke ep'-ler lee'-ker dee; vhah: ön'-sker dee; voor mahng'-e khee'-loo; voor mü:':-e kos'-ter dis'-se poo'-te:-te-ne; aw ray'-se boort; ee maw'-ren tee'-lee; aw hah: de; brah: de a:x; mean sös'-ter; aw se; et-ter; seen sön; det'-te; ro:':-ke-lahks; spraw'-ke; tüssk; frahnsk; de: kom'-mer paw

### Exercise 11

What were the questions which received the ten replies below? The important words are printed in italics.

- 1 Jeg bor *i Bergen*.
- 2 Vi reiser *i morgen tidlig*.
- 3 Jeg har *det bra*.
- 4 Det er *min søster*.
- 5 Hun ser etter *sin sønn*.
- 6 Jeg foretrekker *dette eplet*.
- 7 Det er *røkelaks*.
- 8 Jeg snakker *fire språk*.
- 9 Jeg snakker *engelsk, tysk, fransk og norsk*.
- 10 Det kommer på *67 kroner og 50 øre*.

## 12 More about negatives

You have already seen that 'not' is expressed by ikke:

**Nei, de snakker ikke norsk.**  
No, they don't speak Norwegian.

Here are some more negatives:

aldri	never
ingen, ikke noen (common)	no one, no
intet, ikke noe, ingenting (neuter)	nothing, no
ikke lenger	no longer
ikke mer	no more

Examples:

**Han spiser aldri fisk.**  
He never eats fish.

**Vi venter ingen (or ikke noen) til middag.**  
We expect no one for dinner.

**Det er ikke noe (or ingenting) igjen.**  
There is nothing left.

**De røker ikke lenger.**  
They no longer smoke.

**De har ikke noen ledig stilling.**  
They have no vacant post.

**Vi har ikke mer brød.**  
We have no more bread.

## Vocabulary

å gå på kino	to go to the cinema
gjesten	the guest
landstedet	the country house

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION ahl'-dree; ing'-en, ik'-ke noo'-en; in'-tet, ik'-ke noo'-e; ing'-en-ting; ik'-ke leng'-er; ik'-ke mer; hahn spee'-ser ahl'-dree fisk; vee ven'-ter ing'-en til mid'-dahg; de: a:r ik'-ke noo'-e i-yen'; dee ro:':-ker ik'-ke leng'-er; dee hah:r ik'-ke noo'-

en le:-dee stil'-ling; vee hah:r ik'-ke mer brö:; aw gaw paw khee:-  
noo; yes'-ten; lahn'-ste:-de

## Exercise 12

Translate:

- 1 He never goes to the cinema.
- 2 They have no guests.
- 3 We have no country house.
- 4 I want nothing (I don't want anything).
- 5 You have no more bread.
- 6 It's no longer cold.

## 13 Demonstratives

The most common demonstratives have already been mentioned: **denne**, **dette**, **disse** (this, this, these) and **den**, **det**, **de** (that, that, those). They are always stressed and can refer to persons, things or ideas:

denne bilen	this car	den bilen	that car
dette huset	this house	det huset	that house
disse bøkene	these books	de bøkene	those books

Denne, dette, disse refer to something very near – and den, det, de to something at a certain distance from the speaker. To emphasise something near we sometimes add **her** (here); to emphasise something more remote we add **der** (there). The demonstratives can be used either before a noun or alone:

Denne bilen (**her**) er min, men den (**der**) tilhører min nabo.  
This car is mine, but that one belongs to my neighbour.

Note that the English word 'one' is not translated:

Hvilket rom ønsker De? Jeg ønsker dette.  
Which room would you like? I'd like this one.

Remember that the -e form of the adjective (sec. 7) is used after the demonstrative pronouns: **denne nye dressen**, **dette store rommet**, **disse lange bordene**. Note also that the noun following the adjective normally appears in the definite form (as in the examples given above).

## Vocabulary

uforglemmelig	unforgettable
moderne	fashionable
å mene	to mean
mye bedre	much better
jeg vil ha	I'd like
brødet	the loaf of bread
kaken	the cake

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION den'-ne bee'-len; det'-te hu:-se; dis'-se bù:-ke-nø; den bee'-len; de hu:-se; dee bo:-ke'nø; den'-ne bee'-len  
(hat) ar meen men den (dar) til'-hö-rrer meen nah:-boo; vil'-ket room  
öns'-ker dee; yay öns'-ker det'-te; den'-ne nü:-e dres'-sen; det'-te stoo:-  
re room'-me; dis'-se lang'-e boo'-re-ne; u-for-glem'-me-lee; moo-dar'-  
ne; aw me:-ne; mü:-e be:-dre; yay vil hah; bro:-e; kah:-ken

## Exercise 13

Translate, using the right demonstrative pronouns:

- 1 that pleasant evening
- 2 this warm summer
- 3 those unforgettable days
- 4 that dangerous crossroads
- 5 these blue mountains
- 6 this fashionable ship
- 7 'Don't buy that book!' 'What book do you mean?'  
'I mean that one. This one is much better.'
- 8 I'd like two loaves of bread: this one and that one.  
And three cakes: two of these and one of those.

## 14 The numbers 1 to 100

The numbers 1 to 29 are:

1	en, ett	16	seksten
2	to	17	sytten
3	tre	18	atten
4	fire	19	nitten
5	fem	20	tyve (tjue*)
6	seks	21	enogtyve (tjuen*)
7	syv (sju*)	22	toogtyve (tjueto*)
8	åtte	23	treogtyve (tjuetre*)
9	ni	24	fireogtyve (tjuefire*)
10	ti	25	femogtyve (tjuefem*)
11	ellevé	26	seksogtyve (tjueseks*)
12	tolv	27	syvogtyve (tjuesju*)
13	tretten	28	åtteogtyve (tjuéåtte*)
14	fjorten	29	niogtyve (tjueni*)
15	femten		

The tens from 30 to 100 are:

30	tredve (tretti*)	70	sytti
40	forti	80	åtti
50	femti	90	nitti
60	seksti	100	(ett)hundre

By following the patterns shown for 21 to 29 you will be able to form any number between 30 and 100. In the traditional method of counting still used by the majority of Norwegians, the small numbers precede the units of ten. The two are written in one word and linked by *og*: **toogtredve** (32), **femogforti** (45) etc.

But in the new method of counting introduced in schools, broadcasting etc. by decree of 1951, the tens precede the small numbers, and the two are written in one word: **tjuen** (21), **trettito** (32), **fortifem** (45) etc. The special official forms used in this method are marked above with an asterisk.

The Norwegian word for 'zero' is **null**.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION en, et; too; tre; fee'-re; fem; seks; sii:v, shu; ot'-ie; nee; tee; el'-ve; tol; tref'-ten; fyoor'-ten; fem'-ten; say'-sten; set'-ten; aht'-ten; nit'-ten; tü've; khu:'e; e:n'o-tü:ve, khu-e-en'; too'o-tü:ve, khu-e-too'; tre'o-tü:ve, khu-e-tre'; feer'o-tü:ve, khu-e-fee're; fem'o-tü:ve, khu-e-fem'; seks'o-tü:ve, khu-e-seks'; sii:v'o-tü:ve, khu-e-shu'; ot'te-o-tü:ve, khu-e-ot've; nee'o-tü:ve, khu-e-nee'; tred've, tret'-tee; för'-tee; fem'-tee; seks'-tee; söt'-tee; ot'-tee; nit'-tee; (et) hun'dre; nul

### Exercise 14

Complete the following sums, writing all numbers in words:

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| a) 2 + 9 = *   | g) 33 x 3 = ***    |
| b) 5 + 7 =     | h) 100 + 25 = **** |
| c) 15 - 9 = ** | i) 15 x 5 =        |
| d) 22 + 44 =   | j) 68 ÷ 4 =        |
| e) 23 - 10 =   | k) 6 x 8 =         |
| f) 56 - 32 =   | l) 98 ÷ 14 =       |

\* Read: 2 *og* (aw) 9 *er* ...

\*\* Read: 15 minus (mee'-nus) 9 *er* ...

\*\*\* Read: 33 ganger (gahng'-er) 3 *er* ...

\*\*\*\* Read: 100 dividert med (dee-vee-de:r'- me:) 25 *er* ... (The Norwegians use : for division, not ÷)

### Vocabulary

delikatesseforretningen	the delicatessen
kjøpmannen	the shopkeeper
Vær så god!	Can I help you?
frue	madam
landturen	the picnic
vi skal på landtur	we're going on a picnic
jeg vil gjerne ha	I'd like

smørbrød pålegg

the cooked meats, sandwich fillings, etc.

skinken

the ham

skinkerullen

the luncheon meat

utmerket

excellent

Hvor mye koster det?

How much is it?

kiloen

the kilo

skiven

the slice

omtrent

about

så tykk

that thick

spesialiteten

the speciality

litt

some, a little

spekeskinke

the cured ham

spekepølsen

the cured sausage

fenalåret

the cured leg of lamb

la meg få

let me have

nok

enough

å klare seg

to do, be enough

har De lyst til?

would you like?

å prøve

to try

røkelaksen

the smoked salmon

rakørreten

the corned trout

laget av

made from

nyfisket

freshly caught

å rense

to clean

å salte

to salt

å legge (ned)

to arrange

trebutten

the small wooden tub

minst

at least

for

before

å servere

to serve

å smake

to taste

lukten

the smell

kanskje

perhaps

alt

all

det koster

it comes to

kassen

the cash desk

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION de-lee-kah-tes'-se-for-ret'-ning-en; khöp'-mahn-nen; var saw goo'; fru':-e; lahn'-tu-ren; vee skahl-paw' lahn'-tu; yay vil yar'-ne hah; smör'-brö-paw-leg'-ge; shin'-ken; shin'-ke-rul-len; u:t-mar-ke:t; voor mü':-e kos'-ter de:e; khee'-loo-en; shee'-ven; om-trent'; saw tük; spe-syah-lee-te:'-ten; lit; spe:'-ke-shin'-ken; spe:'-ke-pöl-sen; fe:nah-law'-re; lah: may faw; nok; aw klah:-re say; hah: dee lüs til; aw pró:-ve; rö':-ke-lahk-sen; rah:k'-ör-re-ten; lah':-get ah:v; nü':-fis-ket; aw ren'-se; aw sahl'-te; aw leg'-ge ne:d; tre:-but-ten; minst; för; aw sar-ve:'-re; aw smah:'-ke; look'-ten; kahn'-she; ahlt; de: kos'-ter; kahs'-sen

## Conversation

### I delikatesseforretningen

*In the delicatessen*

Kjøpmannen Vær så god, frue!

*Shopkeeper Can I help you, madam?*

Fru McLeod Vi skal på landtur, og jeg vil gjerne ha noe riktig godt smørbrød pålegg.

*We're going on a picnic, and I'd like some very good cooked meats or sandwich fillings.*

Kjøpmannen Jeg har en meget fin skinke, og denne skinkerullen er også utmerket.

*I've a very fine ham, and this luncheon meat is excellent too.*

Fru McLeod Hvor mye koster det?

*How much is it?*

Kjøpmannen Skinken koster 197 kroner kiloen og skinkerullen 190 kroner. Hvor mye skal De ha?

*The ham is 197 kroner a kilo and the luncheon meat 190. How much would you like?*

Fru McLeod Jeg skal ha fire skiver av skinke og fire skiver av skinkerullen. Omrent så tykke.

*I'd like four slices of the ham and four slices of the luncheon meat. About that thick.*



**Kjøpmannen** Vær så god, frue. Hva sier De om noen norske spesialiteter, litt spekeskinke eller spekepølse til å ha på smørbrød? Eller litt fenalår?

*Here you are, madam. What about some Norwegian specialities, some cured ham or cured sausage to put in sandwiches? Or some cured leg of lamb?*

**Fru McLeod** La meg få noen tynne skiver spekeskinke, er De snill.  
*Let me have some thin slices of cured ham, please.*

**Kjøpmannen** Er det nok, frue?  
*Is that enough, madam?*

**Fru McLeod** Takk, det klarer seg.  
*Thank you, that'll do.*

**Kjøpmannen** Har De lyst til å prøve noen andre norske spesialiteter, røkelaks eller rakørret?  
*Would you like to try some other Norwegian specialities, smoked salmon or corned trout?*

**Fru McLeod** Jeg vil ha to skiver av røkelaksen.  
Men hva er rakørret?  
*I'd like two slices of the smoked salmon. But what is corned trout?*

**Kjøpmannen** Rakørret blir laget av nyfisket ørret. Den blir renset og saltet og lagt i en trebrett i minst tre måneder før den blir servert. Har De lyst til å smake på den, frue?  
*Corned trout is made from freshly caught trout. It's cleaned and salted and arranged in a small wooden tub for at least three months before it is served. Would you like to taste it, madam?*

**Fru McLeod** Nei, takk! Jeg klarer meg med lukten! En annen gang, kanskje.  
*No, thank you! The smell is enough for me! Some other time perhaps.*

**Kjøpmannen** Javel, frue. Er det alt?  
*All right, madam. Is that all?*

**Fru McLeod** Ja, jeg tror det. Hvor mye kommer det på til sammen?  
*Yes, I think so. How much does it all come to?*

**Kjøpmannen** Det blir 55 kroner og 90 øre. Vennligst betal i kassen!  
*It's 55 kroner and 90 øre. Would you please pay at the cash desk.*

**Fru McLeod** Mange takk! Ade!  
*Thank you very much. Goodbye!*

**Kjøpmannen** Ade, frue, og ha en hyggelig landtur!  
*Goodbye, madam, and have a pleasant picnic!*

# Chapter 4

This chapter covers:

- the possessive adjectives ('my', 'your', etc.) and the possessive pronouns ('mine', 'yours', etc.)
- some variations on the usual adjective endings
- the comparative and superlative forms of adjectives, including some common irregular ones
- more personal pronouns: the object forms 'me', 'him', etc.
- how to tell the time in Norwegian

## 15 Possessive adjectives

The possessive adjectives are:

min (common sing.)	my	vår	our
mitt (neuter sing.)		vårt	
mine (plural)	your	våre	your
din		deres	
ditt	your	ders	your
dine			
Deres (formal)	your	ders	their
dens (common sing.)			
dets (neuter sing.)	its		
hans	his		
hennes	her	deres	their

Min, din and vår agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer (that is, with the thing possessed, not with the owner):

min bil  
din bil  
vår bil

mitt hus  
ditt hus  
vårt hus

mine naboer  
dine naboer  
våre naboer

The other possessives remain unchanged in the neuter singular and in the plural.

Instead of min bil, ditt hus, hennes bror, våre naboer, etc. we often say: bilen min, huset ditt, broren hennes, naboen våre, etc. In the third person only, the reflexive sin is used instead of hans, hennes, dens, dets and deres when referring back to the subject of the clause:

Hun kommer i sin bil/  
bilen sin.  
She comes in her car.

But: Hennes bil er rød.  
Her car is red.

Han kommer i sin bil/  
bilen sin.  
He comes in his car.

But: Hans bil er blå.  
His car is blue.

Han tar sin bil/bilen sin.  
He takes his (own) car.

But: Han tar hans bil/  
bilen hans.  
He takes his (i.e.  
another person's) car.

Sin agrees in gender and number with the noun in the same way as min and din:

Han selger sitt hus/huset sitt. He sells his house.  
De selger sine hus/husene sine. They sell their houses.

Note that the possessive pronouns are normally omitted in connection with parts of the body, clothes etc.:

Han rister på hodet.  
He shakes his head.

Du må ha tørre sokker på bena og et tykt skjerf rundt halsen.  
You must have dry socks on your feet and a thick scarf around your neck.

After possessives, a following adjective takes the -e form (sec. 7):

Hvor er min lille hund?

Where is my little dog?

Hun har fått en flekk på sin nye kjole.

She's got a stain on her new dress.

## Vocabulary

forsinket	late
jeg må	I have to
å leve	to deliver
bagasjen	the luggage
forretningsforbindelsene	the business associates
å besøke	to visit
kjæresten	the boyfriend/girlfriend
mannskapet	the crew
å vaske	to wash

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION *meen beel, mit hu:s, mee'-ne nah'-boo-er; deen beel, dit hu:s, dee'-ne nah'-boo-er; vawr beel, vort hu:s, vaw'-re nah'-boo-er; bee'-len meen, hu'-se dit, broo'-ren hen'-nes, nah'-boo-e-ne vaw'-re; hahns, hen'-nes, dens, dets, de'-res; seen; hun kom'-mer ee seen beel; hen'-nes beel ar rö; hahn kom'-mer ee seen beel; hahns beel ar blaw; hahn tahr seen beel/bee'-len seen; hahn tahr hahns beel/bee'-len hahns; hahn sel'-ler sit hus/hu:-se sit; dee sel'-ler see'-ne hus/hu:-se-ne; hahn ris'-ter paw hoo'-de; du; maw hah: tör'-re sok'-ker paw be'-nah aw et tükt sharf runt hahl'-sen; voor ar meen lil'-le hun; hun hahr fot en fiek paw seen nü:-e kho:-le; for-sin'-ket; yay maw; aw le-ve:-re; bah-gah:-shen; for-ret'-nings-for-bin'-nel-se-ne; aw be-sö:-ke; kha:-res-ten; mahn'-skah:-pe; aw vahs'-ke*

## Exercise 15

Translate:

- 1 Where are my blue shirt, my red tie, my brown socks?
- 2 This is your wallet, your passport and your tickets.

- 3 Our plane is late.\*
- 4 They have to deliver their suitcases.\*
- 5 Their luggage is in the plane.\*
- 6 His business associates are expecting him.
- 7 She is visiting her boyfriend.\*
- 8 The plane and its crew.
- 9 Wash your hands!\*\*
- 10 He has a hat on his head.\*\*

\* Give both alternatives (model: min bil – bilen min)

\*\* Drop the possessive adjective.

## 16 Possessive pronouns

Instead of saying 'it is my car', using the possessive adjective 'my', we can say 'the car is mine', using the possessive pronoun 'mine'.

In Norwegian the possessive pronouns have the same forms as the possessive adjectives, and *min*, *din*, *sin*, *vår* agree in the same way with the noun to which they refer.

Examples:

*Denne bilen er min, den er deres.*  
This car is mine, that one is theirs.

*Det bildet er ditt.*  
That picture is yours.

*De koffertene er våre.*  
Those suitcases are ours.

*Dette huset er hennes.*  
This house is hers.

Note that the English expression 'He is a friend of mine' must be translated **Han er en venn av meg** (lit. 'He is a friend of me').

## Vocabulary

setet	the seat
alt	everything
feilen*	the fault

\* Feil is an irregular common gender noun, in that it does not have an indefinite plural: '(some) faults' feil, 'the faults' feilene.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION den'-ne bee'-len a:r meen, den a:r de:-res; de: bil'-de a:r dit; dee koof'-fer-te-ne a:r vaw'-re; det'-te hu:'se ar hen'-nes; hahn a:r ein ven ah:v may; se:-t; ahlt; fay'-len

## Exercise 16

Translate:

- That seat is hers, this one is yours.
- These newspapers are ours, those are theirs.
- Nothing in this house is his, everything is mine.
- We have our faults, and you have yours.

## 17 More about adjectives

Adjectives ending in -el, -en or -er drop their -e- before the ending in the plural:

Common	Neuter	Plural	
enkel	enkelt	enkle	simple
väken	väkent	väkne	awake, watchful
mager	magert	magre	thin, lean

Some adjectives ending in -sk, -d, -s and -e have no -t in the neuter singular:

et norsk skip	a Norwegian ship
et fremmed språk	a foreign language
et felles anliggende	a joint concern
et fristende tilbud	a tempting offer

But note these adjectives which do add a -t in the neuter:

friskt smør	fresh butter
ferskt brød	fresh bread

Note also that adjectives ending in -s or -e have no additional ending in the plural:

felles anstrengelser	joint efforts
fristende tilbud	tempting offers

## Vocabulary

lammekoteletten	the lamb chop
flagget	the flag
moderne	modern

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION en'-kel, en'-kelt, en'-kle; vaw'-ken, vaw'-kent, vaw'-kne; mah'-ger, mah'-gert, mah'-gre; et norsk sheep; et frem'-med sprawk; et fel'-les ahn-lig'-ge-ne; et fris'-te-ne til'-bu:d; friskt smö:r; farskt brö:; fel'-les ahn'-streng-el-set; fris'-te-ne til'-bu:d; lahm'-me-kot-te-let-ten; flahg'-ge; moo-dar'-ne

## Exercise 17

Translate:

- simple clothes
- watchful eyes
- lean lamb chops
- a Norwegian flag, Norwegian flags
- a foreign country, foreign countries
- a joint concern, joint concerns
- a modern house, modern houses

## 18A Comparison of adjectives

In Norwegian, comparisons are usually made by adding **-ere** (or **-re**) in the comparative and **-est** (or **-st**) in the superlative:

høy – høyere – høyest	{ tall – taller – tallest
	high – higher – highest
lav – lavere – lavest	low – lower – lowest
pen – penere – penest	pretty – prettier – prettiest
stygg – styggere – styggest	ugly – uglier – ugliest

Examples:

Pål er høy.

Pål is tall.

Men Per er høyere.

But Per is taller.

Og Espen er den høyeste i familien.

And Espen is the tallest in the family.

Den veien er kort.

That road is short.

Den veien er kortere enn den første.

That road is shorter than the first one.

Men denne veien er den korteste av dem alle.

But this road is the shortest of them all.

## 18B Irregular comparison of adjectives

Some adjectives have irregular comparison, changing their stem (or stem vowel) in the comparative and in the superlative:

god – bedre – best	good – better – best
dårlig – verre – verst	bad – worse – worst
ung – yngre – yngst	young – younger – youngest
gammel – eldre – eldst	old – older – oldest
liten – mindre – minst	small – smaller – smallest
stor – større – størst	big – bigger – biggest
få – færre – færrest	few – fewer – fewest
mange – flere – flest	many – more – most
lang – lengre – lengst	long – longer – longest

Adjectives of several syllables (and participles of verbs used as adjectives) form their comparative and superlative with **mer ‘more’** and **mest ‘most’**, as in English:

problematisk – mer problematisk – mest problematisk
problematic – more problematic – most problematic
spennende – mer spennende – mest spennende
exciting – more exciting – most exciting
fornøyd – mer fornøyd – mest fornøyd
satisfied – more satisfied – most satisfied

## Vocabulary

klassen	the class
Danmark	Denmark
Sverige	Sweden
skandinavisk	Scandinavian
fjelltoppen	the mountain peak
underholdende	entertaining
biblioteket	the library

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION höy, höy'-e-re, höy'-est; lah:v, lah:'-ve-re, lah:'-vest, pe:n, pe:'-ne-re, pe:'-nest; stüg, stüg'-ge-re, stüg'-gest; pawl a:r höy; men per:a:r höy'-e-re; aw' es'-pen a:r den höy'-es-te ee fah-mee'-lyen; den vay'-en ar kort; den vay'-en ar kor'-te-re en den för'-ste; men den'-ne vay'-en a:r den kor'-te-ste ah:v dem ahl'-le; goo:, be'-dre, best; dawr'-lee, var'-re, varst; oong, üng'-re, üngst; gahm'-mel, el'dre, elst; lee'-tn, min'-dre, minst; sto:r, stör'-re, störst; faw, far'-re, far'-rest; mahng'-e, fle:-'re, fle:st; lahng, leng'-re, lengst; mer:, me:st; proob-le-mah':-tisk; spen'-nen-de; for-nöyd'; klahs'-sen; dahm'-mark; sva'-rye; skahn-dee-nah: - visk fyel'-top-pen; un'-ner-hol-le-ne; bib-lyoo-te:-ke

## Exercise 18

Translate:

- 1 Kate is younger than Marit. But Berit is the youngest girl in the class.
- 2 Norway is larger than Denmark. But Sweden is the largest of the three Scandinavian countries.
- 3 Skagastølstind is higher than Snøhetta. But Galdhøpiggen is the highest mountain peak in Norway.
- 4 Trondheimsfjorden is longer than Oslofjorden. But Sognefjorden is the longest of them all.
- 5 This book is more entertaining than that one. But that one is the most entertaining book I have in my library.

## 19 Object forms of the personal pronouns

These are the forms of the personal pronouns which are used as a direct or indirect object (e.g. me, them) and after a preposition (e.g. for me, to them):

meg	me	oss	us
deg	you	dere	you
Dem	you		
ham (han)	him		
henne	her	dem	them
den	it		
det			

Examples:

Unnskyld meg! Excuse me!

Kan jeg hjelpe deg? Can I help you?

Kan De gi oss en kvittering? Can you give us a receipt?

Fortell dem hele historien! Tell them the whole story!

Jeg skriver et brev til henne. I'm writing a letter to her.  
Du må stole på ham. You have to trust him.

The possessive forms of the personal pronouns (Deres, hans, hennes, dens, dets, deres) were described in secs 15 and 16.

The reflexive pronoun seg is used in the third person instead of ham, henne, den, det, dem when referring back to the subject of the clause. Look at the difference between:

Han ber sin venn om å gjemme seg.  
He asks his friend to hide (himself).

Han ber sin venn om å gjemme ham.  
He asks his friend to hide him.

## Vocabulary

armbåndet	the bracelet
å glemme	to forget
å takke	to thank
å skrive om	to write about
vær så snill (å)	please
varene	the goods
å sende	to send
så snart det passer for ham	at his earliest convenience
en gang i uken	once a week

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION un'-shül may; kahn yay yel'-pe  
day; kahn dee yee os e:n kvit-te:-ring; for-te:l dem he:-le his-too:-ryen; yay skree'-ver et bre:v til hen'-ne; du: maw stoo:-le paw  
hahm; hahn be:r seen ven om aw yem'-me say/hahm; ahrm'-bon-ne; aw glem'-me; aw tahl'-ke; aw skree'-ve om; var saw snil (aw);  
valh'-re-ne; aw sen'-ne; saw snah:t de: pahs'-ser for hahm; e:n gang  
ee u':-ken

### Exercise 19

Translate:

- 1 Give her a bracelet!
- 2 Don't forget to thank him for it.
- 3 Please write to me about it.
- 4 Her mother is waiting for her at the station.
- 5 Please send us the goods at your earliest convenience.
- 6 I visit them once a week.

## 20 Time

Hva (or Hvor mange) er klokken?	What time is it?
Kan De si meg hva riktig klokke er?	Can you tell me the right time?
Klokken er ti.	It's ten o'clock.
Den er ti.	It's ten.
Den er ett minutt over ti.	It's one minute past ten.
Den er fem over ti.	It's five past ten.
Den er kvart (or et kvarter) over ti.	It's a quarter past ten.
Den er ti på halv elleve.	It's twenty past ten.
Den er halv elleve.	It's half past ten.
Den er fem over halv elleve.	It's twenty-five to eleven.
Den er kvart (or et kvarter) på elleve.	It's a quarter to eleven.
Den er fem på elleve.	It's five to eleven.
Ved hvilket klokkeslett?	At what time?
Klokken tolv middag.	At (twelve o'clock) midday.
Klokken tolv midnatt.	At (twelve o'clock) midnight.
Klokken ni om morgenen.	At nine o'clock in the morning.

Klokken ni om kvelden  
(or aftenen).

Klokken to om ettermiddagen. At two o'clock in the afternoon.

The abbreviation kl is used for 'o'clock': kl 2 '2 o'clock', kl 8 '8 o'clock' etc.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION vah: (vor mahng'-e) a:r klok'-ken; kahn dee see may vah: rik'-tee klok'-ke air; klok'-ken air tee; den a:r tee; et minut' aw'-ver tee; fem aw'-ver tee;; kvaht (et kvahr-ter') aw'-ver tee; tee paw hahl el'-ve; hahl el'-ve; fem aw'-ver hahl el'-ve; kvaht (et kvahr-ter') paw el'-ve; fem paw el'-ve; ve: vil'-ket klok'-ke-slet; klok'-ken tol mid'-dah:g; mid'-naht; klok'-ken nee om maw'-re-nen; om kvel'-len (ahf'-te-nen); klok'-ken too: om et'-ter-mid-dah:gen

### Exercise 20

Write the following times in words:

- a) 2.15, 2.30, 2.45, 3.00
- b) 3.05, 3.20, 3.40, 3.55
- c) 4.01, 4.12, 4.26, 4.37

## Vocabulary

kläerne	the clothes
ekspeditøren	the shop assistant
ferien	the holiday
neste	next
uken	the week
sjøreisen	the cruise
Nord-Norge	Northern Norway
Hurtigruten	the Coastal Express
reisen	the journey, the trip
sportsklärene	the sportswear
vanlig	ordinary
ytterkläerne	the outdoor clothes
nokså	rather

der oppe	up there
takket være	thanks to
Golfstrømmen	the Gulf Stream
kystklimaet	the coastal climate
temmelig	fairly
mildt	mild
uten	without
isbjørnen	the polar bear
nok	enough
badevær	swimming weather
fjorden	the fjord
på denne tiden	at this time
nord	north
å skifte	to change
fort	quickly
hva slags	what kind of
å anbefale	to recommend
ekstra	extra
undertøyet	the underwear
strømpebuksene	the tights
undertrøyen	the vest
sportsskjorten	the sports shirt
genseren	the sweater
nordavinden	the north wind
boblejakken	the quilted anorak
den forede kappen	the lined overcoat
å se ut som	to look like
forresten	besides
å ha råd til	to afford
å komme med	to come up with
forslaget	the suggestion
valget	the choice
selvfølgelig	of course
å sette pris på	to appreciate
javel	(yes) certainly

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION kla:r'-ne; eks-pe-dee-tö':-ren; fe-ryen; nes'-te; u':-ken; shö':-ray-sen; noo:r'-nor-ge; hur'-tee-ru-ten; ray'-sen; sports'-kla:r-ne; vah:n'-lee; uit'-ter'-kla:r-ne; nok'-saw; da:r op'-pe; tahl'-ket va':-re; golf'-ström-men; khüst'-kleeh-mah-e; tem'-me-lee; milt; u':-ten; ees'-byör-nen; nok; bah':-de-va:r; fyoo':-ren; paw den'-ne tee'-den; noo:r; aw shif'-te; foort; vah: slahgs; aw ahn'-be-fah:-le; ek'-strah; un'-ner-töy-e; ström'-pe-book-se-ne; un'-ner-

tröy-en; sports'-shoor-ten; gen'-se-ren; noo'-rah-vin-nen; bob'-le-yahk-ken; den foo':-n-de kahp'-pen; aw se: u:t som; for-res'-ten; aw hah: raw til; aw kom'-me me; for'-slah-ge; vahl'-ge; sel-fö'l'-ge-lee; aw set'-te prees paw; yah:-vel

## Conversation

### Vi kjøper klær Buying clothes

**Ekspeditøren** Hva kan jeg hjelpe Dem med?  
*Shop assistant* What can I do for you?

**Fru McLeod** Min mann og jeg er på ferie i Norge. I neste uke skal vi på en sjøreise til Nord-Norge med Hurtigruten, og vi trenger noen varme klær til å ha på under reisen.  
*My husband and I are on holiday in Norway. Next week we are going on a cruise to Northern Norway with the Coastal Express, and we need some warm clothes to wear on the trip.*

**Ekspeditøren** Vil De ha sportsklær eller vanlige ytterklær, frue?  
*Would you like sportswear or ordinary outdoor clothes, madam?*

**Fru McLeod** Vi har ikke vært i Nord-Norge før. Det er nokså kaldt der oppe, ikke sant?  
*We haven't been to Northern Norway before. It's rather cold up there, isn't it?*

**Ekspeditøren** Nei, takket være Golfstrømmen er kystklimaet temmelig mildt. Men uten den ville det sikkert vært isbjørner i gatene, og vi ville vært eskimoer alle sammen!  
*No, thanks to the Gulf Stream the coastal climate is fairly mild. But without it there would certainly be polar bears in the streets and we'd all be Eskimos!*

Fru McLeod Vi tok bare med oss vanlige sommerklær.  
Det er vel ikke nok?  
*We just brought ordinary summer clothes. That won't be enough, will it?*

Ekspeditøren Jeg tror ikke det, frue. Det kan riktignok være badevær inne i fjordene på denne tiden av året. Men så langt nord skifter klimaet veldig fort.  
*I think it won't, madam. It's true it can be warm enough to swim (lit. There can certainly be swimming weather) in the fjords at this time of the year. But so far north the climate changes very quickly.*

Fru McLeod Hva slags klær anbefaler De oss da å kjøpe?  
*So, what kind of clothes would you recommend us to buy?*

Ekspeditøren Først og fremst tror jeg dere vil trenge noe ekstra varmt undertøy, noen lange strømpebukser og en troye, en sportsskjorte og en tykk genser. Og for å beskytte dere mot den kalde nordavinden, ville jeg anbefale en boblejakke eller en foret kappe ...  
*First of all I think you'll need some extra warm underwear, some long tights and a vest, a sports shirt and a thick sweater. And to protect you against the cold north wind I'd recommend a quilted anorak or a lined overcoat ...*

Herr McLeod Med alt dette ville vi alle se ut som isbjørner! Forresten har vi ikke råd til det.  
*With all that we'd look like polar bears! Besides, we couldn't afford it!*

Ekspeditøren Unnskyld, jeg ville bare komme med noen forslag for å gjøre valget lettere for Dem.  
*Excuse me, I just meant to make a few suggestions to make the choice easier for you.*

Fru McLeod Selvfølgelig setter vi pris på det. Men jeg tror vi begynner med å se på noen boblejakker til barna og noen lette forede kapper til min mann og meg.  
*Of course we appreciate that. But I think we'll start by looking at some quilted anoraks for the kids and some light lined overcoats for my husband and myself.*

Ekspeditøren Javel, frue. Vær så god, denne veien!  
*Certainly, madam. This way, please!*

# *Chapter 5*

In Chapter 5 you will learn:

- how verbs divide into two groups, 'weak' and 'strong', and how the past tense is formed for each group
- how to form adverbs from adjectives
- some common adverbs not formed from adjectives
- some differences between Norwegian and English word order
- how to form the ordinal numbers ('first', 'second', 'third', etc.)

## **21 The past tense of weak verbs**

The Norwegian past tense is used, in much the same way as in English, to describe events or actions which took place in the past.

Norwegian has two main groups of verbs with different patterns of conjugation: weak (regular) verbs and strong (irregular) verbs (sec. 22).

Most weak verbs form their past tense by adding: **-et** or **-te** to the stem:

**kast + et = kastet** (threw), **bruk + te = brukte** (used) etc.

Examples:

miste	mistet (mista*)	lose	lost
vente	ventet (venta*)	wait	waited
snakke	snakket (snakka*)	talk	talked
stoppe	stoppet (stoppa*)	stop	stopped
leke	lekte	play	played

føle	følte	feel	felt
gjemme	gjemte	hide	hid
mene	mente	mean	meant
lære	lærte	learn	learned
lese	leste	read	read
sende	sendte	send	sent
trenge	trengte	need	needed
fylle	fylte	fill	filled
dømme	dømte	dream	dreamt
tenne	tente	light	lighted

\* Colloquial (and Nynorsk) form

Note that verbs with a stem ending in **-ll**, **-mm**, **-nn** drop their last letter before the ending: **fylle** – **fylte** etc.

Some verbs take **-de** (-et\*\*) or **-dde**:

bygge	bygde (bygget**)	build	built
leve	levde (levet**)	live	lived
eie	eide (eiet**)	own	owned
bøye	bøyde (bøyet**)	bend	bent
bo	bodde	live (stay)	lived (stayed)
blø	blødde	bleed	bled
ha	hadde	have	had
kle	kledde	dress	dressed
snu	snudde	turn	turned
vri	vridde	twist	twisted

\*\* Traditional forms still used by many Norwegians.

Note particularly (with one **d** in the past tense):

dø	døde	die	died
----	------	-----	------

A few weak verbs change their stem vowel in the past tense, such as:

selge	solgte	sell	sold
spørre	spurte	ask	asked
gjøre	gjorde	do	did
bringe	brakte	bring	brought

Note that, as in the present tense, the simple tense is used in Norwegian where English would use the continuous tense:  
**Han spurte** = 'He asked' or 'He was asking'.

There is no word corresponding to 'did' in questions and negative sentences (compare sec. 9):

Hva svarte du? What did you answer?  
Jeg gjorde det ikke. I didn't do it.

## Vocabulary

Past tense forms given in brackets.

å kaste (-et) [på]	to throw [at]
steinen	the stone
hverandre	each other
å skade (-et)	to hurt
å hente (-et)	to fetch
treningsdrakten	the track suit
å jogge (-et)	to go jogging
parken	the park
til frokost	for breakfast
å koke (-te)	to boil
noen	some
å steke (-te)	to fry
å høre (-te)	to hear
lyden	the noise
å hende (-te)	to happen
vinden	the wind
kraftig	hard
å lukke (-et)	to close
å bry (-dde) seg om	to worry about

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION mis'-te, mis'-tet; ven'-te, ven'-tet;  
snahk'-ke, snahk'-ket; stop'-pe, stop'-pet; le:k'-e, le:k'-te; fö':-le, fö':-  
-te; yem'-me, yem'-te; me':-ne, me:n'-te, la:':-re, la:r'-te; le':-se, le:s'  
-te; sen'-ne, sen'-te; treng'-e, treng'-te; fü'l'-le, fü'l'-te; dröm'-me,  
dröm'-te, ten'-ne, ten'-te; búg'-ge, búg'-de; le':-ve, lev'-de; ay'-e, ay'-  
-de; böy'-e, böy'-de; boo;, bood'-de; blö, blöd'-de; hah, hahd'-de; kle;,  
kled'-de; snu:, snud'-de; vree, virid'-de; dö:, döv'-de; sel'-le, sol'-te;  
spör'-re, spuz'-te; yö':-re, yoo':-re; bring'-e, brahk'-te; aw kahs'-te  
(paw); stay'-nen; var-ahn'-dre; aw skah':-de; aw hen'-te; tre':-nings-  
drakh-ten; aw yog'-ge; pahr'-ken; til froo-kcsst; aw koo':-ke; noo':-  
-en; aw ste':-ke; aw hö:re; lü:den; aw hen'-ne; vin'-nen; krahf'-tee;  
aw look'-ke; aw brü: say om

## Exercise 21

Translate:

- 1 Some boys were throwing stones at each other.
- 2 We protected our friends.
- 3 He hurt his head.
- 4 They did not believe it.
- 5 She fetched her track suit.
- 6 Every morning she went jogging in the park.
- 7 What did you eat for breakfast?
- 8 I boiled some eggs and fried some potatoes.
- 9 We heard a noise but nothing happened.
- 10 The wind was blowing hard and it was snowing.
- 11 We closed the doors.
- 12 The children were playing on the floor. They didn't worry about the storm.

## 22 The past tense of strong verbs

Strong verbs add no ending in the past tense, but most of them change their stem vowel. Here are some examples:

skrive	skrey	write	wrote
fryse	fros	freeze	froze
drikke	drakk	drink	drank
gi	gav	give	gave
finne	fant	find	found
gå	gikk	walk, go	walked, went
se	så	see	saw
hjelpe	hjalp	help	helped
ta	tok	take	took
skjære	skar	cut	cut
trekke	trakk	pull	pulled

Note particularly:

bli	ble	become	became
være	var	be	was

Some strong verbs keep their stem vowel in the past tense.

For example:

komme	kom	come	came
sove	sov	sleep	slept
lope	lop	run	ran
gråte	gråt	cry	cried

## Vocabulary

å se etter	to look for
herren	the gentleman
å bære (bar)	to carry
mot	towards
i (meget) stor fart	at a (very) high speed
redd	frightened
å løpe av sted	to run away
iskremen	the ice cream
å roe (-et) noen ned	to calm somebody down
å sette (satte) seg	to sit down
å si (sa)	to say

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION skree'-ve, skree; frū'-se, frō:s; drik'-ke, drahk; yee, gah; fin'-ne, fahnt; gaw, yik; se, saw; yel'-pe, yahlp; tah, too;k; sha:-re, skahr; trek'-ke, trahk; ble, ble; va:-re, vahr; kom'-me, kom; saw'-ve, sawv; lōp-e, lōp; graw'-te, grawt; aw se; el'-ter, har'-ren; aw ba:-re (bah:r); moom;t; ee (me:-get) sto:or; fahrt; red; aw lō'-pe ah:v sted; ees'-kre:mən; aw roo':-e noo':-en ne:d; aw set'-te (saht'-te) say; aw see (sah:)

## Exercise 22

Translate:

- 1 She wrote a letter to the chairman.
- 2 They found the man they were looking for.
- 3 He was walking down the street.
- 4 This gentleman helped me.
- 5 He took my suitcases and carried them to the station.
- 6 The car came towards him at a very high speed.
- 7 The boy was frightened and ran away.
- 8 His parents seized him and held him back.
- 9 They gave him an ice cream to calm him down.
- 10 He sat down and said nothing.

## 23 Adverbs

Some adverbs have the same form as the neuter singular of the corresponding adjective (sec. 6). They are formed by adding a -t to the common gender form of the adjective: pen (nice) + t = pent (nicely).

Examples:

klok	klokt	wise	wisely
langsom	langsomt	slow	slowly
rask	raskt	quick	quickly
sikker	sikkert	certain	certainly
oppmerksom	oppmerksomt	attentive	attentively
søt	sett	sweet	sweetly

Adverbs from adjectives ending in -ig, or -t preceded by another consonant, add no -t:

plutselig suddenly fullstendig completely

<b>forferdelig</b>	terribly	<b>fort</b>	quickly
<b>daglig</b>	daily		

Some adverbs add the ending **-vis**:

<b>vanlig</b>	<b>vanligvis</b>	usual	usually
<b>heldig</b>	<b>heldigvis</b>	fortunate	fortunately
<b>naturlig</b>	<b>naturligvis</b>	natural	naturally
<b>sannsynlig</b>	<b>sannsynligvis</b>	probable	probably

Here are some other common adverbs:

<b>fremover</b>	forward	<b>nå</b>	now
<b>bakover</b>	backwards	<b>før</b>	before
<b>oppover</b>	upwards	<b>senere</b>	later
<b>nedover</b>	downwards	<b>ennå, enda</b>	still
<b>ovenfor</b>	above	<b>ellers</b>	otherwise
<b>nedenfor</b>	below	<b>ofte</b>	often
<b>innenfor</b>	inside	<b>sjeldent</b>	seldom
<b>utenfor</b>	outside	<b>knappt, neppe</b>	hardly
<b>meget, svært</b>	very	<b>bare</b>	only
<b>altfor mye</b>	too much	<b>nettopp</b>	just
<b>nok</b>	enough	<b>især</b>	particularly
<b>lite, litt</b>	(a) little	<b>endog, selv</b>	even
<b>straks</b>	immediately	<b>likevel</b>	yet

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION *pein, peint; kloo:k, kloo:kt; lahng'-som, lahng'-somt; rahsk, rahskt; sik'-ker, sik'-kert; op-mark', somt; söt, söt; plut'-se-lee; ful-sten'-dee; for-far'-de-lee; dah:g'-lee; foort; vah:n'-lee-vees; hel'-dee-vees; nah-tur'-lee-vees; sahn-stiin'-lee-vees; frem'-maw-ver; bah:-'kaw-ver; op'-paw-ver; ne:-'daw-ver; aw'-ven-for; ne:-den-for; in'-nen-for; u':-ten-for; me':-get, svar:t; ahll'-for mü':-e; nok; lee':-te; lit; strahks; naw; fö:r; se':-ne-re; en'-naw; en'-dah; ef'-lers; of'-te; shel'-den; knahpt, nep'-pe; bah:-'re; net'-top; ee-sar':; en'-dawg; sel; lee':-ke-vel*

## 24 Word order

In Norwegian the order of the words is often the same as in English. For example: *Han lesrer avisen*. 'He reads (or is reading) the newspaper.' But in Chapter 2 we saw that the verb is put before the subject in questions: *Leser du?* 'Do you read?' or 'Are you reading?' Inversion of the word order (verb before subject) also takes place in sentences beginning with an adverb or an adverbial expression:

**Her er de!** Here they are!  
**Noen ganger går jeg på kino.** Sometimes I go to the cinema.  
**Til slutt gikk hun hjem.** At last she went home.

**I gaten var det mange mennesker.**  
In the street there were lots of people.

**(Jeg visste ikke at du var der,) ellers ville jeg ha ventet.**  
(I did not know that you were there,) otherwise I would have waited.

Note also that adverbs never come between the subject and the verb as in English:

**Han lesrer alltid avisen.** He always reads the newspaper.  
**De drikker aldri kaffe.** They never drink coffee

## Vocabulary

<b>kanskje</b>	perhaps, maybe
<b>sterkt(t)</b>	strong(ly), bad(ly)
<b>å dra (drog) på fjelltur</b>	to go on a mountain tour
<b>å begynne</b>	to begin
<b>å regne (-et)</b>	to rain
<b>regnfrakken</b>	the raincoat
<b>vi ble gjennomvåte</b>	we got wet through
<b>litt etter litt</b>	gradually
<b>nærmere</b>	nearer
<b>til slutt</b>	finally
<b>å komme frem til</b>	to arrive at
<b>bestemmelserstedet</b>	the destination
<b>virkelig</b>	really

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION *har a:t dee; noo:-en gahng'-er gawr yay paw khee'-noo; til slut yik hoon yem; ee gah:-ten vahr de: mahng'-e men'-ne-skier; yay vis'-te ik'-ke aht du: vah:r dar, el'-lers vil'-le yay hah: ven'-tet; hahn le:-ser ahl'-tee ah-vee'-sen; dee drik'-ker ahl'-dree kahf-fe; kahn'-she; stark(t); aw drah: paw fyel'-tur; aw be-yün'-ne; aw ray'-ne; rayn'-frakh-ken; vee ble: yen'-nom-vaw:-te; lit ef'-ter lit; nar'-me-re; til slut; aw kom'-me frem til; be-stem'-mel-ses-ste:-de; vir'-ke-lee*

### Exercise 23

A Give the corresponding adjectives and adverbs in Norwegian:

- |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 slow - slowly   | 5 correct - correctly |
| 2 quick - quickly | 6 bad - badly         |
| 3 clear - clearly | 7 heavy - heavily     |
| 4 kind - kindly   | 8 terrible - terribly |

B Translate:

- 1 usually, naturally, upwards, downwards, below, above
- 2 very, too much, now, still, yet, seldom, hardly, just, only, differently, particularly, perhaps

C Translate:

- 1 We badly wanted to go on a mountain tour.
- 2 It suddenly began to rain. We had no raincoat, so we soon got wet through.
- 3 But we gradually came nearer to the mountains.
- 4 We finally arrived at our destination.
- 5 We really needed some dry clothes!

## 25 Ordinal numbers

Some ordinal numbers have irregular forms:

firste	1st	femte	5th
annen (andre)	2nd	sjette	6th
tredje	3rd	ellevte	11th
fjerde	4th	tolvte	12th

But most ordinal numbers are formed by adding **-ende**, **-nde** or **-de** to the cardinal number:

(syv (sju) + ende =)	syvende (sjuende)	7th
(åtte + nde =)	åttende	8th
(ni + ende =)	niende	9th
(ti + ende =)	tiende	10th
(tretten + de =)	trettende	13th
(fjorten + de =)	fjortende	14th
(femten + de =)	femtende	15th
(seksten + de =)	sekstende	16th
(sytti + de =)	sytende	17th
(atten + de =)	attende	18th
(nitten + de =)	nittende	19th
(tyve + nde =)	tyvende (tjuende)	20th
(enogtyve + nde =)	enogtyvende	21st
(toogtyve + nde =)	toogtyvende	22nd
(tretti + ende =)	trettiende (tredevte)	30th
(forti + ende =)	fortiende	40th
(femti + ende =)	femtiende	50th
(seksti + ende =)	sekstiende	60th
(sytti + ende =)	syttiende	70th
(åtti + ende =)	åttiende	80th
(nitti + ende =)	nittiende	90th

Remember that, while most Norwegian say **enogtyvende**, **toogtyvende**, **femogtredevte**, **fireogførtiende**, **seksogfemtiende** etc., according to the official method of counting the small numbers (1–9) should be spoken after units of ten (20–90): **tjueførste**, **tjuændre**, **trettifemte**, **førtifjerde**, **femtisjette** etc.

In both traditional and colloquial speech ordinals are used in fractions, as in English:

en tredjedel	a third (lit. third part)
to tredjedeler	two thirds
fire femtedeler	four fifths

But cardinals are used in modern schoolbooks: **en tredel** (lit. a three part), **to tredeler**, **fire femdeler**.

Note these fractional expressions:

en kvart kilo	a quarter (of a) kilo
en halv kilo	half a kilo
tre kvart kilo	three quarters of a kilo
en og en halv uke	one and a half weeks

Ordinals are also used in such expressions as:

for det første	firstly
for det annet (or andre)	secondly
for det tredje	thirdly
hvert fjerde år	every four years (lit. every fourth year)

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION för'-ste; ah'-en, ahn'-dre; tre'-dye; fyā'-re; fem'-te, shet'-te, el'-lev-te, tol'-te; sū'-ve-ne, shu'-e-ne, ot'-te-ne, nee'-e-ne, tee'-e-ne, tret'-te-ne, fyoor'-te-ne, fem'-te-ne, says'-te-ne, sōt'-te-ne, aht'-te-ne, nil'-te-ne, tū'-ve-ne, khu'-e-ne, en'-o-tū'-ve-ne, khu-e-för'-ste, too'-o-tū'-ve-ne, khu-e-ahn'-dre, tre'-dye-te, tre'-tee-e-nee, för'-tee-e-ne, fem'-tee-e-ne, seks'-tee-e-ne, sōt-tee-e-ne, of'-tee-e-ne, nil'-tee-e-ne; en tre'-dye-de-ler; too: tre'-dye-de-ler; fee'-re fem'-te-de-ler; en kvaht khee'-loo; en hahl khee'-loo; tre: kvaht khee'-loo; en aw en hahl u'-ke; for de: för'-ste; for de: ah'-ent (ahn'-dre); tre'-dye; vart fyā'-re awr

## Exercise 24

Translate, using words instead of figures:

- 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th
- 11th, 12th, 13th, 20th, 21st, 32nd, 45th, 53rd, 66th, 78th, 87th, 99th
- 1/2, 3/4, 5/8, 7/12, 8/15

## Vocabulary

(The past tense endings of verbs are given in brackets)

å ende (-dde)	to end
å begynne (-te)	to start
selskapet	the party
mye	plenty
å drikke (drakk)	to drink
å danse (-et)	to dance
å gå på (en) rangel	to go boozing
å vende (-te) tilbake	to go back, return
pyntelig	properly
å falle (-te) i sovn	to fall asleep
stakkars	poor
å skru (-dde) på	to turn on
dusjen	the shower
å la (lot)	to let
varm	hot
å skylle (-te)	to pour
stunden	the while
forberedt	prepared
problemet	the problem
fornøyd	pleased
fordi	because
ettermiddagen	the afternoon
du måtte	you had to
overfylt	(over)crowded
hyggelig	pleasant
hele	whole
godt	nice
å se på fjernsyn	to watch television
formen	the shape
frisk som en fisk	as fit as a fiddle (lit. fresh as a fish)

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION: We feel that you should now be fairly confident as far as the pronunciation is concerned, and we are discontinuing the imitated pronunciation at this point. If you are still having difficulty with this aspect of the language, we strongly recommend that you purchase the cassette recordings which accompany this course.

## Conversation

Når enden er god, er allting godt  
All's well that ends well

Fru Hansen Hva gjorde De i går, herr McLeod?  
*What did you do yesterday, Mr McLeod?*

Herr McLeod Det begynte meget dårlig. Jeg stod sent opp.  
*I had a very bad start. I got up late.*

Fru Hansen Hva mener De med sent?  
*What do you call late?*

Herr McLeod Omrent halv ett, tror jeg.  
*About half past twelve, I think.*

Fru Hansen Hvorfor sov De så lenge?  
*What made you sleep that long?*

Herr McLeod Min kone og jeg var i et selskap natten før.  
Vi fikk mye å spise og drikke, og vi danset  
og snakket til klokken to om natten.  
*My wife and I were at a party the night before.  
We got plenty to eat and drink and we went on  
dancing and talking till two o'clock in the  
morning (lit. night).*

Fru Hansen De var på en ordentlig rangel, ikke sant?  
*You really went boozing, didn't you?*

Herr McLeod Nei, det var ikke så ille. Vi vendte tilbake til  
hotellet og gikk pent og pyntelig og la oss.  
Men jeg sovnet ikke før klokken fem om  
morgen!  
*No, it wasn't that bad. We went back to the hotel  
and went to bed properly. But I didn't fall asleep  
till five o'clock in the morning!*

Fru Hansen Stakkars Dem! Og hva gjorde De så om  
morgenen?  
*Oh, poor you! And what did you do in the  
morning?*

Herr McLeod Ja, jeg skrudde på dusjen og lot det varme  
vannet skylle ned over meg en lang, lang  
stund. Så avsluttet jeg mitt bad med en kald  
dusj, og etterpå følte jeg meg klar til å møte  
dagens store og små problemer.

*Well, I turned on the shower and let the hot water  
pour down on me for a long, long while. Then I  
finished my wash with a cold shower, and after  
that I felt prepared to meet the large and small  
problems of the day.*

Fru Hansen Ble det noen problemer, da?  
*Were there any problems?*

Herr McLeod Ja, det skal være sikkert! Min kone var ikke  
særlig glad, for hun ønsket å gå og handle  
med meg om morgenen.  
*Yes indeed! My wife wasn't very pleased  
because she wanted to go shopping with me in  
the morning.*

Fru Hansen Og så måtte dere gå og handle om  
ettermiddagen?  
*And so you had to do the shopping in the  
afternoon?*

Herr McLeod Ja, men alle forretningene var overfylt av  
mennesker, og vi gikk fra den ene forret-  
ningen til den andre hele ettermiddagen.  
*Yes, but the shops were all crowded with people,  
and we spent the whole afternoon walking from  
shop to shop.*

Fru Hansen Så dere hadde altså en riktig dårlig dag?  
*So you really had a bad day?*

Herr McLeod Nei, etterpå gikk vi hjem og tilbrakte en  
hyggelig aften – på hotellet.  
*No, after that we went home and spent a pleasant  
evening – at the hotel!*



- Fru Hansen På hotellet? Og hva gjorde dere hele aftenen?  
*At the hotel? But what did you do the whole evening?*
- Herr McLeod Ja, vi fikk noe godt å spise, og vi så på fjernsyn! Og klokken elleve sovnet vi!  
*Well, we got something nice to eat and we watched television! And at eleven o'clock we fell asleep!*
- Fru Hansen Og i dag er De i fin form?  
*And today you're in good shape?*
- Herr McLeod Ja, jeg føler meg frisk som en fisk!  
*Yes, I feel as fit as a fiddle!*

## Chapter 6

This chapter introduces:

- the past participle of verbs and how it is used to form the perfect tense
- some irregular verbs – the ‘modal auxiliaries’
- the comparative and superlative forms of adverbs, including some common irregular ones
- some adverbs with two forms, expressing location and motion
- seasons, months and how to give the date

### 26 The past participle

The past participle is formed by adding one of the following endings to the stem of the verb:

-et (-a*):	kastet (kasta*)	thrown
-t:	brukt	used
-tt:	gått	gone, walked
-d (-et**):	levd (levet**)	lived
-dd:	kledd	dressed

\* colloquial and Nynorsk form

\*\* traditional form

### 27 The perfect tense

The perfect tense of most verbs is composed of the auxiliary *ha* ‘have’ and the past participle of the principal verb. This is the same as in English:

Jeg har spist.  
I have eaten.

Han har sovet.  
He has slept (or has been sleeping).

De har solgt huset (sitt).  
They have sold their house.

I dag har vi vært på konsert.  
Today we have been to a concert.

Some verbs form their perfect tense with *være*; see sec. 35.

## 28 Rehearsing the verb

To rehearse a verb is to recite its three key forms: the infinitive, the past tense and the past participle. Knowing how to rehearse a verb, you will be able to use it in all tenses.

The following lists of *weak* and *strong* verbs will give you an idea of the main verb patterns:

### Weak verbs

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Past participle</i>
snakke talk	snakket (-a)	snakket (-a)
vente wait	ventet (-a)	ventet (-a)
føle (seg) feel	følte	følt
trenge need	trengte	trengt
leve live	levde	levd
eie own	eide	eid
gro grow	grodde	grodd
snu turn	snudde	snudd
vri twist	vridde	vridt
ha have	hadde	hatt
dø die	døde	dødd
selge sell	solgte	solgt
gjøre do	gjorde	gjort
spørre ask	spurte	spurt
bringe bring	brakte	brakt

### Strong verbs

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past tense</i>	<i>Past participle</i>
skrive write	skrev	skrevet
si say	sa	sagt
fryse freeze	fros	frosset
drikke drink	drakk	drukket
finne find	fant	funnet
brekke break	brakk	brukket
hjelpe help	hjalp	hjulpet
gi give	gav	gitt
gå go	gikk	gått
se see	så	sett
la let	lot	latt
ta take	tok	tatt
skjære cut	skar	skåret
komme come	kom	kommet
løpe run	løp	løpt
gråte cry	gråt	grått
bli become, be	ble	blitt
være be	var	vært

Rehearse the above verbs in small groups until they are familiar, and learn every new verb in this course in the same way. From this chapter on the key forms of all new verbs will be indicated in the vocabularies as shown here:

føle (-te, -t)  
bære (bar, båret)

feel  
carry

### Vocabulary

på lang tid	for a long time
brevet	the letter
kollegaen	the colleague
å komme (kom, kommet)	
for sent til	to miss
travel	busy
babyen	the baby
hele natten	all night
å føle (-te, -t) seg	to feel
deprimert	depressed

å gå (gikk, gått) en tur	to go for a walk
å tilbringe (-brakte, -brakt)	to spend
sammen	together
hele livet (vårt)	all our lives (lit. our whole life)
siste	last
filmen	the film
på kino	to the cinema

### Exercise 25

Translate:

- 1 Have you talked with your friend?
- 2 No, I haven't seen him for a long time, but I have written a letter to him.
- 3 Your colleagues have been waiting for you.
- 4 I've missed the train.
- 5 She's had a busy day.
- 6 The baby has been crying all night.
- 7 She's been feeling depressed.
- 8 They've gone for a walk.
- 9 We've spent a good time together.
- 10 We've been living in Oslo all our lives.
- 11 Have you seen his last film?
- 12 No, I haven't been to the cinema for many years.

### 29 More irregular verbs

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Present tense</i>	
å burde	jeg bør	I should, I ought to
å kunne	jeg kan	I can, I am able to
å måtte	jeg må	I must, I have to
å skulle	jeg skal	I shall, I am to
å ville	jeg vil	I will, I want to

The past tense of these verbs has the same form as the infinitive (jeg burde, jeg kunne etc.) and they can also be used in the perfect tense (jeg har burdet, jeg har kunnet etc.).

The English translations of the present tense are only meant to give you a rough idea of the meaning of these verbs – the so-called modal auxiliaries. You will gradually become familiar with them, but in the meantime, study the examples below and note how these verbs are translated:

**Jeg kan ikke snakke norsk.**

I cannot speak Norwegian.

**Da bør (burde) du lære det.**

Then you should (you ought to) learn.

**Du må hjelpe meg.**

You must help me.

**I morgen skal jeg besøke mine foreldre.**

Tomorrow I shall (I am to) visit my parents.

**Skal jeg komme i overmorgen?**

Shall I (Would you like me to) come the day after tomorrow?

**Ja, om aftenen vil jeg være ledig.**

Yes, in the evening I shall be free.

**Ved hvilket klokkeslett vil(le) du komme?**

At what time do you want (would you like) to come?

As you see, the auxiliaries are used with a principal verb in the infinitive: **kan (ikke) snakke, bør lære** etc. But if the principal verb is a verb expressing motion, it can sometimes be dropped:

**Hvor skal du?**

Where are you going?

**Jeg må på kontoret.**

I must go to the office.

**Barna ville på kino.**

The children wanted to go to the pictures.

**Skal du i selskap?**

Are you going to a party?

In some of the above examples *skal* and *vil* are used together with an infinitive to express the future (see sec. 41).

Note also the irregular forms of the verb *å vite* 'to know': *jeg visste* 'I knew'; *jeg har visst* 'I have known'. This follows a similar pattern to the modal auxiliaries.

## Vocabulary

på forhånd	in advance, beforehand
når	at what time
å hente (-et, -et)	to collect
tidlig	early

## Exercise 26

Translate:

- 1 Where shall we go this evening?
- 2 I want to go to the cinema.
- 3 We ought to order tickets in advance.
- 4 Yes I know that. At what time must we collect the tickets?
- 5 When would you like me to come (lit. that I shall come)?
- 6 Can you come a bit earlier?
- 7 I'll be there at six.
- 8 We mustn't be too late.

## 30 Comparison of adverbs

Many adverbs are compared, like the adjectives, by adding -(e)re in the comparative and -(e)st in the superlative, as in:

sjeldent	seldom	sjeldnere	sjeldnest
ofte	often	oftere	oftest
sakte	slowly	saktere	saktest
fort	fast	fortere	fortest
tidlig	early	tidligere	tidligst
sent	late	senere	senest
lett	easy	lettere	lettest

But note the following adverbs which have irregular comparison:

lite	little	mindre	less	minst	least
mye (meget)	much	mer	more	mest	most
vondt	badly	verre	worse	verst	worst
godt	well	bedre	better	best	best
langt	far	lengre	farther	lengst	farthest

Adverbs of two or more syllables generally form the comparative with *mer* 'more' and the superlative with *mest* 'most', as for example:

klosset	clumsily	mer klosset	mest klosset
energisk	energetically	mer energisk	mest energisk
komfortabelt	comfortably	mer komfortabelt	mest komfortabelt
oppmerksomt	attentively	mer oppmerksamt	mest oppmerksamt

## Vocabulary

i natt	last night
å bli (ble, blitt)	to get
å føle seg	to feel
helt, fullstendig	completely
frisk (igjen)	recovered
å stå (stod, stått) opp	to rise
å forstå (-stod, -stått)	to understand

å bli forstått  
å lytte (-et, -et)  
tydelig

to be understood  
to listen  
distinct

## Exercise 27

Translate:

- 1 Last night she got worse.
- 2 But in the morning she felt much better.
- 3 Later in the day she was completely recovered.
- 4 Next day she rose the earliest and worked the fastest of us all.
- 5 Do you want to understand better what people say and be more easily understood?
- 6 Then you must listen more attentively and speak more distinctly.

## 31 More about adverbs

Some adverbs appear in two different forms:

inn	inne	in(side)
ut	ute	out(side)
opp	oppe	up
ned	nede	down
bort	borte	away
hjem	hjemme	home, at home

The short forms (inn, ut etc.) are used to indicate motion towards a place; the forms with a final -e indicate position, being in a place:

Kom inn!  
Come in!

Vi er alle inne.  
We are all in(side).

Klokken 7 skal vi gå ut.  
At 7 o'clock we'll go out.

Vi blir (or Vi vil bli) ute til 11.  
We'll stay out till 11.

Vi skal (dra opp) til Holmenkollen.  
We'll go up to Holmenkollen.

Der oppe vil vi (få) se den berømte hoppbakken.  
Up there we'll see the famous ski jump.

Similarly, in Norwegian there is a distinction between **her** 'here' and **der** 'there' on the one hand, and **hit** ('hither') and **dit** ('thither') on the other. The English words 'here' and 'there' must therefore sometimes be translated by **her** and **der**, sometimes by **hit** and **dit**:

Her er vi. Here we are.

Kom hit. Come here.

De sitter der (borte). They are sitting over there.

Gå ikke dit! Don't go there!

Jeg er her i bygningen nå. I'm here in this building now.

Jeg kom hit klokken 12. I came here at 12 o'clock.

In some idiomatic expressions **her** and **der** are used to replace the English demonstratives 'this' and 'that':

her i byen	in this town
der i landet	in that country
her i familien	in this family
der i huset	in that house

## Vocabulary

å treffe (traff, truffet)	to meet
å kjøre (-te, -t)	to drive
å be (bad, bedt)	to invite
uten å si fra til oss	without telling us
å følge (fulgte, fulgt) husordenen	to comply with the regulations

## Exercise 28

Insert the correct form of the adverb in the brackets:

- 1 Per gikk (down) på gaten.
- 2 (Down) på gaten traff han en venn.
- 3 De kjørte (away) i en bil.
- 4 De ble (away) i tre timer.
- 5 (At home) ventet foreldrene på ham.
- 6 De bad meg (home).
- 7 Du skulle ikke gå (there) uten å si fra til oss.
- 8 (In this house) må alle følge husordenen.

## 32 Seasons

årstiden	the season
våren	the spring
sommeren	the summer
høsten	the autumn
vinteren	the winter

Note the following expressions:

om våren, om sommeren etc.	in the spring, in the summer etc.
til våren	next spring
i fjor sommer	last summer
i høst	this autumn
sist vinter	during the past winter

## 33 Months and dates

måneden	the month
datoen	the date
januar	January

mai	May	september	September
juni	June	oktober	October
juli	July	november	November
august	August	desember	December

Note that the months of the year are not written with a capital letter as in English.

Ordinal numbers are used in dates, as in English:

Hvilken dato er det i dag? What is the date today?  
Det er den første juni. It's the first of June.  
Det er den syvende juli. It's the seventh of July.  
Det er den syttende mai. It's the seventeenth of May.

In figures these are written as: 1. juni (1st June), 7. juli (7th July), 17. mai (17th May).

Public holidays:

Nyttårsdag (1. januar)	New Year's Day
Skjærtorsdag	Maundy Thursday
Langfredag	Good Friday
Annen påskedag	Easter Monday
Arbeidets dag (1. mai)	Labour Day (May Day)
Nasjonaldagen (17. mai)	Constitution Day
Kristi Himmelfartsdag	Ascension Day
Første pinsedag	Whit Sunday
Annen pinsedag	Whit Monday
Første juledag (25. desember)	Christmas Day
Annen juledag (26. desember)	Boxing Day

## Vocabulary

å gå (gikk) på skitur	to go skiing
å gå på skøytebanen	to go skating
å gå på aketur	to go sledging
påskeferien	the Easter holidays
fjellhytta	the mountain hut
å feire (-et, -et)	to celebrate
å dra (drog, dratt) på fisketur	to go fishing
fjellvannet	the mountain lake
vi skal dra på seiltur	we shall go sailing

## Exercise 29

Translate:

- 1 Which season do you prefer?
- 2 I like all seasons.
- 3 In winter we go skiing and skating and sometimes sledging.
- 4 Last spring we spent the Easter holidays in a mountain hut in Hallingdal.
- 5 We stayed there from Maundy Thursday till Easter Monday.
- 6 On the seventeenth of May we celebrated the Norwegian Constitution Day.
- 7 This summer we went fishing in a mountain lake in Gudbrandsdalen.
- 8 During the past autumn we were walking in the mountains.
- 9 Next summer we shall go sailing in the Oslofjord.
- 10 What date is it today?
- 11 It's 6th January, 28th February, 11th March, 21st April, 4th July, 2nd September, 25th October, 3rd November, 27th December.
- 12 It's New Year's Day, Good Friday, Ascension Day, Christmas Day, Whit Monday.

## Vocabulary

hotellbaren	the hotel bar
å håpe (-et, -et)	to hope
enda en	another
søvnlös	sleepless
å sove (sov, sovet)	to sleep
som en sten	like a log (lit. a stone)
hva er galt med	what's wrong with
usivilisert	uncivilised
litt	a bit
tapper	brave
å kjempe (-et, -et)	to fight
du har nok rett	I suppose you're right
skikken	the custom
å skåle (-te, -t)	to toast
Skål!	Cheers!
å stamme (-et, -et) fra	to originate from
polskipet	the polar ship
Norsk Sjøfartsmuseum	Norwegian Maritime Museum
å like (-te, -t)	to enjoy
særlig	particularly
sønnen	the son
fengslet (av)	fascinated (by)
flåten	the raft
å lage (-et, -et) middagen	to prepare the dinner
bondegården	the farmhouse
stavkirken	the stave church
leikarringen	the folk dance ensemble
å danse (et, -et)	to dance
folkedansene	the folk dances
de regnet dagen for slutt	they called it a day
slutt (over)	over
ennå	yet
musikal'en	the musical
å skynde (-dte, -dt) seg	to hurry
God fornøyelse!	Have a good time!

## CONVERSATION

### Møte i hotellbaren Meeting in the hotel bar

- Fru Hansen God dag, herr McLeod. Hvor har De vært i hele dag? Jeg håper De ikke har hatt enda en sovnlos natt?  
*Good afternoon, Mr McLeod. Where have you been all day? I hope you haven't had another sleepless night?*
- Herr McLeod Nei, da! I natt har jeg sovet som en sten! Vi stod tidlig opp, og vi har vært sammen med vår familie på Bygdøy hele dagen.  
*Oh no! Last night I slept like a log! We got up early, and we spent the whole day with our family at Bygdøy.*
- Fru Hansen Så dere hadde en travl dag?  
*So you've had a busy day?*
- Herr McLeod Ja, det hele begynte med vikingskipene. De skjønner, jeg har aldri vært særlig glad i vikingene ...  
*Yes, it all started with the Viking ships. You see, I've never really liked the Vikings ...*
- Fru Hansen Hva er det som er så galt med vikingene? De var kanskje mer usiviliserte og litt galere enn andre mennesker på den tiden. Men de var tapre og kjempet godt ...  
*What's (so) wrong with the Vikings? They were perhaps more uncivilised and a bit more crazy than other people at that time. But they were brave and fought well ...*
- Herr McLeod De har nok rett. I det minste må de ha visst hvordan de skulle bygge skip. Forresten, visste De at den gamle skikken med å skåle stammer fra vikingene?

*I suppose you're right. At least they must have known how to build ships! By the way, did you know that the old custom of toasting originates from the Vikings?*

- Fru Hansen Nei, det visste jeg ikke. Skål for vikingene, herr McLeod!  
*No, I didn't. Cheers to the Vikings, Mr McLeod!*
- Herr McLeod Skål for vikingene!  
*To the Vikings!*
- Fru Hansen Nå, og hva mer så dere?  
*Well, and what else (lit. more) did you see?*
- Herr McLeod Min bror tok med meg og to av barna til Bygdøyenes for å se polarskipet 'Fram', 'Kon-Tiki' og Norsk Sjøfartsmuseum.  
*My brother took me and two of the kids to Bygdøyenes to see the polar ship 'Fram', the 'Kon-Tiki' and the Norwegian Maritime Museum.*
- Fru Hansen Barna Deres likte nok det, ikke sant?  
*Your kids enjoyed that, didn't they?*
- Herr McLeod Ja, særlig min sønn David var fengslet av 'Fram' og 'Kon-Tiki'-flåten.  
*Yes, especially my son David was fascinated by the 'Fram' and the 'Kon-Tiki' raft.*
- Fru Hansen Og hva med Deres kone og svigerinne? Var de fengslet av å være hjemme og lage middagen?  
*And what about your wife and your sister-in-law? Were they fascinated by staying at home preparing the dinner?*
- Herr McLeod Nei, de drog på Folkemuseet for å se på bondegårdene og den gamle stavkirken. De så til og med en leikarring som danset de gamle folkedansene.  
*No, they went to the Folk Museum to see the farmhouses and the old stave church. They even saw a 'leikarring' dancing the traditional folk dances.* →

Fru Hansen    Og dermed var dagen slutt?  
                  And you called it a day?

Herr McLeod Ja, det trodde jeg! Men den er ikke slutt  
ennå. Vi har kjøpt billetter til en musikal på  
Det Norske Teatret i kveld. Unnskyld, jeg  
må skynde meg! Adjø!  
*So I thought! But it isn't over yet. We've bought  
tickets for a musical at the Norwegian Theatre  
tonight. Excuse me, I must hurry! Goodbye!*

Fru Hansen    Adjø. Og god fornøyelse!  
                  Goodbye. And have a good time!

## Chapter 7

In Chapter 7 you will learn:

- a new tense: the pluperfect
- how some verbs form the perfect and pluperfect tenses with **være**, not **ha**
- some frequently used prepositions ('in', 'at', 'by', etc.)
- how to say 'there is' and 'there are' in Norwegian
- the indefinite pronouns 'some', 'someone', 'any', 'anyone' and so on
- larger numbers and some numerical expressions
- how to talk about the weather

### 34 The pluperfect

The pluperfect tense is composed of the past tense of **ha** 'have' and the past participle of the principal verb (compare the perfect tense, sec. 27):

Vi hadde vært på en fotballkamp.  
We had been to a football match.

De hadde allerede spist middag da vi kom hjem.  
They had already had dinner when we came home.

De hadde sett kampen på fjernsyn.  
They had seen the match on television.

### 35 Verbs conjugated with **være**

The verb **være** 'be' is traditionally used instead of **ha** in the perfect and the pluperfect tense of verbs expressing motion or change, such as **gå** 'go', **komme** 'come', **reise (bort)** 'leave', **bli** 'become', **begynne** 'begin', **sovne** 'fall asleep' etc.

Hun er nettopp kommet. She has just arrived.  
De var allerede reist. They had already left.  
Han er blitt syk. He has been taken ill.

But in modern colloquial speech ha is often used even in these cases: Hun har nettopp kommet etc.

## Vocabulary

alvorlig	serious(ly)
å forlate (-lot, -latt)	to leave
å bli (ble, blitt) bedre	to get better
i fjor jul	last Christmas
å forandre (-et, -et) seg	to change
som om	as if

## Exercise 30

Translate:

- 1 My friend had been seriously ill.
- 2 He had left the country.
- 3 Now he had got better, and he had come home.
- 4 We had invited him for dinner.
- 5 I had not seen him since last Christmas.
- 6 He had not changed.
- 7 We talked as if nothing had happened.

## 36 Prepositions

Here are some Norwegian prepositions. Among them are some of the most frequently used words in the Norwegian language:

i	in	for	for
på	on/at	mot	against/towards
over	over	før	before
under	under	etter	after
foran	in front of	mellom	between
bak	behind	uten	without
ved siden av	next to	med	with
til	to/till	ved	at
fra	from	om	in/about/round
av	of/by	innen	within/before

The translations of the prepositions given above indicate only their basic meanings. Study the examples below; we shall give further details on their use later in the course (secs 57, 58, 64):

i byen	in the town
på bordet	on the table
over trærne	over the trees
under sengen	under the bed
foran huset	in front of the house
bak skapet	behind the cupboard
ved siden av Rådhuset	next to the City Hall
til Oslo	to Oslo
fra London	from London
Kongen av Norge	the King of Norway
for deg	for you
mot vinden	against the wind
før jul	before Christmas
etter sommerferien	after the summer holidays
mellom regnskurene	between the showers
uten sukker	without sugar
med melk	with milk
ved vinduet	at the window
om to måneder	in two months
innen et år	within a year

## 37 Det er ('there is')

Det (or der) is used with the verb er (or alternatively finnes) to express the English 'there is' and 'there are':

Det er (or Det finnes) blomster på bordet.  
There are flowers on the table.

Det er (or Det finnes) melk i kjøleskapet.  
There is milk in the fridge.

## Vocabulary

statuen	the statue
Slottet	the Palace
postkassen	the letter box
supermarkedet	the supermarket
mange	plenty of
torget	the marketplace
å vente (-dte, -dt) tilbake	to return
brillene	the spectacles
vanskeligheten	the difficulty
noe	something
reisesyken	the travel sickness
måltidet	the meal
teateret	the theatre
å ligge (lå, ligget)	to be situated
universitetet	the university

## Exercise 31

Translate:

- 1 There's a statue in front of the Palace.
- 2 There's a letter box at the corner.
- 3 There's a supermarket next to the station.
- 4 There are plenty of flowers in the marketplace.

- 5 I had been in Norway since Christmas.
- 6 I had stayed there from January till April.
- 7 I had returned to London before Easter.
- 8 Can you read without your spectacles?
- 9 Only with great difficulty.
- 10 I'd like (to have) something for my travel sickness.
- 11 Don't eat between (the) meals!
- 12 The new theatre is situated behind the university.

## 38 Indefinite pronouns

Here are some useful indefinite pronouns. They are used either alone or in combination with nouns. Some of these pronouns have different forms according to gender and/or number:

noen (common sing.)	some(one), any(one)
noe (neuter sing.)	some(thing), any(thing)
noen (plural)	some, any
ingen (common sing.)	no, no one, none
intet, ikke noe (neuter sing.)	no, nothing
ingen, ikke noen (plural)	no
(en) annen (common sing.)	another
(et) annet (neuter sing.)	another
andre (plural)	other, others
all (common sing.)	all
alt (neuter sing.)	all, everything
alle (plural)	all (of them), everyone
en(hver) (common sing.)	each, every, everyone
(et)hvert (neuter sing.)	each, every

Note also:

ingenting  
allting  
en, man  
mange

nothing  
everything  
one, you, people, they  
many

Examples:

Noen må gjøre det.

Someone must do it.

Har dere noe i rosa?

Have you anything in pink?

Ingen var til stede.

No one was there.

Det var ingenting igjen.

There was nothing left.

Vi hadde ikke noe annet valg.

We had no other choice.

En annen gang, under andre omstendigheter.

Another time, under other circumstances.

Han hadde mistet alle pengene (sine).

He had lost all his money.

Alle var til stede.

All of them were present.

Det var ikke verdt alt strevet.

It wasn't worth all the trouble.

Enhver idiot vet det.

Every fool knows that.

De koster 10 kroner hver.

They cost 10 kroner each.

Jeg nyter hvert øyeblikk.

I enjoy every moment.

Man (or En) skulle tro det.

One (or You, We) should believe that.

Note that **litt** (a little) is often used (with a noun) instead of **noe**:

Jeg kjøpte noen pølser, litt ost og litt frukt.

I bought some sausages, some cheese and some fruit.

## Vocabulary

å telle (-lte, lt)

rik

to count

rich

## Exercise 32

Translate:

- 1 Does anyone here speak English?
- 2 Have you any good oranges?
- 3 They are all good, but some of them are better than the others.
- 4 Something is better than nothing.
- 5 You can't have everything.
- 6 He had counted every hour, every minute.
- 7 She asked each of them.
- 8 They say that he has been very rich.

## 39 More about numbers

Study the following numbers:

100	(ett) hundre	200	to hundre
101	(ett) hundre og en	255	to hundre og femogfemti
110	(ett) hundre og ti		
150	(ett) hundre og femti	300	tre hundre

1 000	(ett) tusen	1 000 000	en million
1 150	ett tusen et	2 000 000	to millioner
	hundre og femti	1 000 000 000	en milliard

2 000 to tusen 2 000 000 000 to milliarder

NOTE: When counting, **hundre** and **tusen** take no plural ending; **to hundre**, **to tusen** etc. Used as nouns, however, they appear in the plural form: **tusener og etter tusener** 'thousands and thousands'.

Note the following collectives and ordinal expressions:

et par	a couple	én gang	once
et dusin	a dozen	to ganger	twice
et snes	a score	tre ganger	three times

### Exercise 33

Complete the following, writing the answers in full:

- |                  |                             |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) $150 + 100 =$ | d) $748 \times 12 =$        |
| b) $260 + 140 =$ | e) $450 \times 125 =$       |
| c) $310 + 575 =$ | f) $3\,570 \times 6\,830 =$ |

## 40 The weather

For obvious reasons the weather is a popular topic of conversation in Norway, as it is in England. Here are some useful expressions:

**Hvordan er været i dag?** What's the weather like today?  
**Det er pent vær.** The weather's fine.  
**Det er dårlig vær.** The weather's bad.  
**Det er solskinn.** The sun's shining.  
**Det er varmt.** It's warm.  
**Det regner.** It's raining

**Det snør (or snør).** It's snowing.

**Det blåser.** It's windy.

**Det er tåket.** It's foggy.

**Det er kaldt.** It's cold.

**Det tiner (or tør).** It's thawing.

### Exercise 34

How would you describe the weather in Norwegian in the following situations?

- 1 Let's go swimming.
- 2 Let's stay at home.
- 3 You need a raincoat.
- 4 We're going to have a white Christmas.
- 5 Hold on to your hat!
- 6 Due to poor visibility you can easily get lost.
- 7 I think you should take a warm overcoat.
- 8 It's springtime.

### Vocabulary

til å være	for
utlendingen	the foreigner
å planlegge (-la, -lagt)	to plan
ganske	quite
å gifte (-et, -et) seg med	to marry
under krigen	during the war
sjansen	the chance
poenget	the point
altfor	far too
ivrig	eager
å mestre (-et, -et)	to master
å bestemme (-mte, -mt)	to decide

språkkurset	the language course
anstrengelsen	the effort
på tre måneder	in three months
bærbar	portable
kassettpilleren	the cassette player
anledningen (til)	the opportunity (to)
båndet	the tape
å slå (slo, slått) av	to switch off
fjernsynet	the television
midt i	in the middle of
såpeoperaen	the soap opera
å studere (-te, -t)	to study
å reagere (-te, -t)	to react
usosial	unsociable
oppforselen	the behaviour
forståelsesfull	understanding
å fortelle (-talte, -talt)	to tell
planen	the plan
like interessert	just as interested

## Conversation

### Norsk på tre måneder Norwegian in three months

Herr Hansen De snakker meget godt norsk til å være utlending, fru McLeod.  
*For a foreigner you speak Norwegian very well, Mrs McLeod.*

Fru McLeod Det er hyggelig av Dem å si det, herr Hansen. De skjønner, min mann og jeg hadde planlagt denne turen i lang tid før vi kom til Norge.  
*It's very kind of you to say so, Mr Hansen. You see, before coming to Norway my husband and I had been planning this tour for quite a long time.*

Herr Hansen Jeg forstår det. Men min nabo giftet seg med en engelsk pike under krigen, og selv tyve år senere hadde hun ikke lært å snakke norsk så godt som De gjør.  
*I see. But my neighbour married an English girl during the war, and even twenty years later she hadn't learnt to speak Norwegian as well as you do!*

Fru McLeod Kanskje De aldri hadde gitt henne en sjanse?  
*Maybe you'd never given her a chance?*

Herr Hansen Jeg tror De har et poeng der, fru McLeod. Vi nordmenn er altfor ivrige etter å vise at vi mestrer Deres språk.  
*I think you've got a point there, Mrs McLeod. We Norwegians are far too eager to show that we master your language.*

Fru McLeod Vi hadde hørt det. Derfor bestemte vi oss for å kjøpe et norsk språkkurs og gjøre et alvorlig forsøk på å lære språket på tre måneder.  
*So we'd heard. That's why we decided to buy a Norwegian language course and to make a serious effort to learn the language in three months.*

Herr Hansen Men hvordan lærte dere de norske r'ene og ø'ene og y'ene? Var det ikke svært vanskelig?  
*But how did you learn the Norwegian r's and ø's and y's? Wasn't that very difficult?*

Fru McLeod Jo, men vi kjøpte hver vår bærbare kassettspiller. Og så ofte som vi hadde anledning til det – fra tidlig om morgen til sent om kvelden – lyttet vi til lydbåndene som var laget til språkkurset. Vi slo til og med av fjernsynet midt i såpeoperaen for å studere norsk!

*Yes, but each of us bought a portable cassette player. And as often as we had the opportunity to*



*do so – from early in the morning till late at night  
– we listened to the tapes made for the language  
course. We even switched off the television in the  
middle of soap operas to study Norwegian!*

**Herr Hansen** Men hvordan reagerte Deres familie og venner på en så 'usosial' oppførsel?  
*But how did your family and your friends react to such 'unsociable' behaviour?*

**Fru McLeod** Nåja, de var forståelsesfulle. Men vi hadde naturligvis fortalt dem om våre planer.  
*Well, they were understanding. But of course we had told them about our plans.*

**Herr Hansen** Dere hadde også ingen problemer?  
*So you had no problems?*

**Fru McLeod** Vårt eneste problem var å finne kassett-spillerne når vi trengte dem. Våre barn var like interessert som vi i å lære norsk!  
*Our only problem was to find the cassette players when we needed them. Our children were just as interested in learning Norwegian as we were!*

## Chapter 8

This chapter covers:

- three ways of talking about the future
- reflexive verbs (such as 'to enjoy oneself')
- the relative pronoun **som**, which translates 'who', 'whom', 'which' and 'that'
- how to say 'as ... as'
- how to join words and sentences using co-ordinating conjunctions: 'and', 'but', and so on

### 41 The future tense

Norwegian has three ways of expressing what we plan to do or what is going to happen in the future. They are by using:

a) the present tense of the principal verb (replacing the future tense or the continuous present in English):

Noen mennesker tviler på at flyplassen noen gang blir ferdig.  
Some people doubt that the airport will ever be finished.

Kommer du i morgen? Are you coming tomorrow?

b) the expression **kommer til å**:

Den kommer til å bli altfor dyr. It's going to be too expensive.

c) the auxiliaries **skal** or **vil** and the infinitive of the principal verb:

Jeg tror ikke de vil fullføre den.  
I don't think they will go through with it.

**Etter planen skal flyplassen være ferdig i 1995.**

According to the plan, the airport is to be finished in 1995.

In principle there is little difference between Norwegian and English in their ways of expressing the future. But as we have already mentioned, the English auxiliaries 'shall' and 'will' cannot automatically be translated by *skal* and *vil*. Note that the basic meaning of *skal* is that something is due to happen according to a decision or a plan: **Etter planen skal flyplassen være ferdig i 1995.**

*Vil* is used to express what is going to happen (pure future): *Flyplassen vil bli (or kommer til å bli) for dyr.* But it can also express desire or will: *Jeg vil komme.* 'I want to come.'

## Vocabulary

å avslutte (-et, -et)	to finish
arbeidet	the work
etterpå	afterwards
ferdig	ready, finished
om fem minutter	in five minutes
å gjøre (gjorde, gjort)	to do some shopping
noen innkjøp	
derfra	from there
hydrofoilen	the hydrofoil
moro	fun
ikke ... før	not ... till

## Exercise 35

*Translate:*

- 1 First I shall finish my work.
- 2 Afterwards we shall have dinner.
- 3 The dinner will be ready in half an hour.

- 4 I am to leave in a few minutes.
- 5 I am going to do some shopping.
- 6 Tomorrow we shall go by plane to Stavanger.
- 7 From there we shall go by hydrofoil to Bergen.
- 8 It will be fun!
- 9 We won't be back till Sunday.

## 42 Reflexive verbs

Å glede seg 'to enjoy oneself' is a reflexive verb (i.e. the action is carried out by the subject on itself). Reflexive verbs are conjugated as follows:

*Present tense*

jeg	gleder	{ meg deg seg seg oss dere seg	I	{ myself yourself himself herself ourselves yourselves themselves
du			you	
han			he	
hun			she	
vi			we	
dere			you	

*Past tense:* Jeg gledet meg, etc. I enjoyed myself, etc.

*Perfect tense:* Jeg har gledet meg, etc. I have enjoyed myself, etc.

The reflexive pronoun *seg* is used in the 3rd person singular and plural. In the 1st and 2nd person singular and plural we use the object form of the personal pronouns (*meg*, *deg*, *oss*, *dere*). (See sec. 19.)

Reflexive verbs are much more common in Norwegian than in English. Here are some examples:

å sette seg	to sit down
å legge seg	to go to bed

å hvile seg	to rest
å strekke seg	to stretch
å bøye seg	to submit, to bend down
å kle på seg	to get dressed
å bekymre seg	to worry
å skynde seg	to hurry
å forlove seg	to get engaged
å gifte seg	to get married
å skille seg	to get divorced
å undre seg	to wonder

Note that **meg selv** (deg selv, seg selv etc.) is only used for emphasis:

Jeg vasker meg. I wash myself/I get washed.  
Jeg vasker meg selv. I wash myself (i.e. I do it myself).

Compare:

Jeg vasker klærne selv. I wash the clothes myself.  
Kjenn deg selv! Know yourself!

Study the following examples:

Han [Mr Olsen] bad henne om å vekke seg [Mr Olsen] kl. 8.  
He asked her to call him at 8 o'clock.

Han [Mr Olsen] bad henne om å vekke ham [Mr Hansen]  
kl. 8.  
He asked her to call him at 8 o'clock.

Note that the reflexive pronoun **seg** must be used when referring back to the subject (**Han** = Mr Olsen).

## Vocabulary

å legge (la, lagt) seg	to go to bed
å komme (kom, kommet)	to get off to work
seg på arbeidet	
tidsnok	in time
i en fart	in a hurry

å hygge (-et, -et)	to have a good time
å slanke (-et, -et) seg	to slim
å kvitte (-et, -et) seg med	to get rid of
overflødig	superfluous, excess

## Exercise 36

A Conjugate in the present tense:  
Jeg setter meg (Jeg setter meg, du setter ... , etc.)

B Translate:

- 1 When do you go to bed?
- 2 Usually we go to bed at half past eleven.
- 3 The little children go to bed at half past seven.
- 4 In the morning we would all like to rest a little longer.
- 5 But we have to get off to work in time.
- 6 We wash and dress in a hurry.
- 7 Only on Sundays can we have a good time at the breakfast table.
- 8 We don't need to slim to get rid of excess kilos!

## 43 The relative pronoun

In Norwegian a single relative pronoun **som** is used to refer back to various different nouns and pronouns, irrespective of their gender and number. Thus **som** can equate to the different English pronouns 'who', 'whom', 'which' and 'that':

Damen som vil kjøpe huset, er nettopp kommet.  
The lady who wants to buy the house has just arrived.

Vi trenger noen (som) vi kan stole på.  
We need someone (whom) we can trust.

Disse fjelltoppene, som er de høyeste i Norge, heter Galdhøpiggen og Glittertind.

These mountain tops, which are the highest in Norway, are called Galdhøpiggen and Glittertind.

Jeg har kjøpt bøkene (som) du bad om.  
I have bought the books (that) you asked for.

As you can see from the second and the last examples above, the relative pronoun *som* sometimes be left out if it is not the subject of the relative clause. This also happens in English.

Hvis is the genitive form of *som*, but is little used except in (traditional) written language.

Mannen hvis bil var blitt stjålet, meldte tyveriet til politiet.  
The man whose car had been stolen reported the theft to the police.

The less formal version would be: Mannen som bilen var blitt stjålet fra ...

Note that *som* is also used in combination with other pronouns, as in *den som, det som, hva som, alt som:*

Den som gjorde det, må betale for det.  
Whoever did it must pay for it.

Det (som) du sa, var sant.  
What you said was true.

Hva som enn hender.  
Whatever happens.

Alt det (som) du gjorde, var riktig.  
Everything you did was right.

## Vocabulary

i morgen	this morning
lyden, ståket	the noise
å vekke (-et, -et) noen	to wake somebody up
å kjenne (-nte, -nt)	to know
avisgutten	the paper boy
morgenavisen	the morning paper

entrédøren	the front door
reportasjen	the report
bankrøvet	the bank robbery
da	then
å slutte (-et, -et) seg til	to join
å spise (-te, -t) frokost	to have breakfast with
sammen med noen	somebody
å sette (satte, satt) seg	to sit down
pengene	the money
å stjele (stjal, stjålet)	to steal
å ligge (lå, ligget)	to be situated
like ved siden av	just next to

## Exercise 37

Translate:

- 1 This morning I heard a noise which woke me up.
- 2 From my window I saw a boy (whom) I knew very well.
- 3 It was the paper boy who brought the morning paper.
- 4 I took the newspaper, which was lying inside the front door.
- 5 The paper that I was reading had (lit. brought) a report on a bank robbery.
- 6 Then my wife, who usually gets up first, came to have breakfast with me.
- 7 She sat down at the breakfast table, and I told her what I had read in the newspaper.
- 8 The bank whose money was stolen was (situated) just next to the station.

## 44 More about comparison

The English comparison 'as ... as' is expressed by **like ... som or likså ... som** or **så ... som**:

Hun er like (or likså) flink som sin bror.  
She is as clever as her brother.

Disse veiene er ikke så bratte som veiene på Vestlandet.  
These roads aren't as steep as the roads in Western Norway.

Kom og besøk meg så ofte (som) du kan.  
Come and see me as often as you can.

In the last sentence **som** can be omitted.

Some comparative forms can be used without any explicit comparison being made at all:

en yngre dame	a youngish (lit. younger) lady
en eldre mann	an elderly (lit. older) man
i lengre tid	for quite a long time
en større sum penger	a considerable sum of money
et mindre uhell	a minor accident
en bedre middag	a (very) good dinner

Some superlatives are used in a similar way to express a (fairly) high degree:

med den største fornøyelse	with the greatest of pleasure
hans minste ønske	his slightest wish
i høyeste grad	in the highest degree
i den beste hensikt	from the best of motives

## Vocabulary

langrenn	cross-country skiing
slalåm	slalom
utfør(renn)	downhill (skiing)
populær	popular
langs	along
kysten	the coast
kredittkortet	the credit card

lett, gjerne	readily
å godta (-tok, -tatt)	to accept
middelaldrende	middle-aged
å hoppe (-et, -et)	to jump
gjerdet	the fence
letheten	the ease
mistanken	the suspicion

## Exercise 38

Translate:

- Cross-country skiing is as exciting as slalom and downhill.
- Mountain tours are as popular as cruises along the coast.
- This room is not as comfortable as the other one.
- You can stay as long as you want.
- Credit cards are not as readily accepted in Norway as in the USA and Canada.
- An elderly lady is not as old as an old lady but she is older than a middle-aged lady.
- He jumped over the fence with the greatest ease.
- No one had the slightest suspicion.

## 45 Co-ordinating conjunctions

The so-called co-ordinating conjunctions – **og** 'and', **men** 'but', etc. – are used to connect words and sentences. They can express the following:

*Connection*

og	and
både ... og	both ... and

#### *Alternatives*

<b>enten ... eller</b>	either ... or
<b>verken ... eller</b>	neither ... nor

#### *Contrast*

<b>men</b>	but
<b>mens</b>	while

#### *Cause*

<b>for</b>	because
------------	---------

Examples:

**gutt og pike** boy and girl  
**både han og hun** both he and she  
**enten den store eller den lille**  
 either the big one or the small one  
**verken for langsomt eller for fort**  
 neither too slowly nor too fast  
**fattig, men stolt** poor but proud

**En lo, mens den andre gråt.**  
 One laughed, while the other cried.

**Jeg gikk ikke, for jeg var forkjølet.**  
 I didn't go because I had a cold.

## Vocabulary

<b>pent, fint</b>	nice
<b>nok så, ganske</b>	fairly
<b>sentralt</b>	central
<b>natklubben</b>	the nightclub
<b>badstuen</b>	the sauna
<b>svømmebassenget</b>	the swimming pool
<b>å gi utsikt over</b>	to overlook
<b>å vende (-dte, -dt) mot</b>	to face
<b>fred og ro</b>	peace and quiet

## Exercise 39

- I'd like a room for me and my wife, something nice and fairly central but not too expensive.
- I need neither a nightclub nor a sauna, but a swimming pool would be nice.
- This room overlooks the park, while the other one faces the street.
- I'll take this one, because I like peace and quiet.
- You can either take a train or fly.

## Vocabulary

<b>innbydelsen</b>	the invitation
<b>kjær</b>	dear
<b>svigerinnen</b>	the sister-in-law
<b>slik en</b>	such a
<b>deilig</b>	lovely
<b>ikke noe å takke for</b>	don't mention it (lit. nothing to thank for)
<b>å lure (-te, -t) på</b>	to wonder
<b>å bli (ble, blitt) med</b>	to join
<b>akkurat nå</b>	just now
<b>å heve (-et, -et)</b>	to cash
<b>reisesjekken</b>	the traveller's cheque
<b>reisebyrået</b>	the travel agency
<b>opplysningene (cpl.)</b>	the information
<b>freden</b>	the peace
<b>roen</b>	the quiet
<b>resten</b>	the rest
<b>å erte (-et, -et)</b>	to tease
<b>vidunderlig</b>	wonderful
<b>å ha (hadde, hatt) lyst (til)</b>	would love (to)
<b>å tilgi (-gav, -gitt)</b>	to forgive
<b>koppen</b>	the cup
<b>nydelig</b>	delicious

plekaken  
å hente (-et, -et)  
å passe (-et, -et) på som  
en smed

the apple tart  
to pick up  
to keep a close watch on (lit.  
watch like a blacksmith)

## Conversation

### Innbydelse til en fottur i Nordmarka Invitation to a walking tour in Nordmarka

- Siri McLeod      **Hei, Anthony!** Dette er Siri.  
*Hello, Anthony! This is Siri.*
- Anthony McLeod      **Hei, kjære svigerinne.** Takk for i går,  
som dere sier i Norge. Det var sånn en  
deilig dag!  
*Hello, dear sister-in-law! Thank you for  
yesterday, as you say in Norway. It was such  
a lovely day!*
- Siri McLeod      **Ikke noe å takke for.** Det var så hyggelig  
å ha dere. Vi lurtet på om dere hadde lyst  
til å bli med oss på en fottur i  
Nordmarka i dag?  
*Don't mention it! It was so nice having you.  
We wondered if you'd like to join us for a  
walk in Nordmarka today?*
- Anthony McLeod      **Så hyggelig av dere, Siri.** Men i dag har  
vi det altfor travelt.  
*How nice of you, Siri. But today we're  
too busy.*
- Siri McLeod      **Travelt dere? Men dere er jo på ferie,**  
ikke sant?  
*Busy, you? But you're on holiday,  
aren't you?*

Anthony McLeod      Ja, men akkurat nå er Janice i banken  
for å heve noen reisesjekker. Og etterpå  
skal hun til reisebyrået for å hente  
billettene til Hurtigruten og for å få  
flere opplysninger om turen vår til  
Nord-Norge i neste uke.

*Yes, but just now Janice is in the bank cashing some travellers' cheques. And after that she's going to the travel agency to collect our tickets for the Coastal Express and to get some more information about our tour to Northern Norway next week.*

Siri McLeod      **Men det tar da ikke hele dagen!**  
*But that doesn't take all day!*

Anthony McLeod      Jeg vet det, men etterpå skal jeg møte  
Janice i byen for å gjøre noen flere  
inkkjøp, og etter det ...  
*I know, but after that I'm to meet Janice in town to do some more shopping, and after that ...*

Siri McLeod      **Jeg forstår.** Og etter det skal dere spise  
lunsj, og etter det er dere så trette at  
dere trenger fred og ro resten av dagen!  
*I see. And after that you'll have lunch, and after that you'll be so tired that you'll need peace and quiet for the rest of the day!*

Anthony McLeod      **Ikke ert meg, Siri.** Det er ikke det at  
vi ikke ønsker å se ditt vidunderlige  
Nordmarka, vet du. Vi har veldig lyst  
til det.  
*Stop teasing me, Siri! It's not that we don't  
want to see your wonderful Nordmarka, you  
know. We'd love to!*

Siri McLeod      **Tilgi meg, Anthony.** Hva med i morgen,  
da?  
*Forgive me, Anthony. What about tomorrow, then?*



**Anthony McLeod** Det er fint!  
*That will be fine!*

**Siri McLeod** OK, da. Og vær så snill å si til Janice at etter fotturen skal hun få en deilig kopp te og en nydelig eplekake på Holmenkollen hotell.  
*OK, then. And please tell Janice that after the walk she'll get a nice cup of tea and a delicious apple tart at the Holmenkollen Hotel.*

**Anthony McLeod** Ja, det skal jeg gjøre. Kunne dere komme og hente oss på hotellet vårt klokken 10?  
*Yes, I will. Could you come and pick us up at our hotel at ten o'clock?*

**Siri McLeod** Ja, og bli ikke sittende for lenge i hotellbaren i kveld, er du snill.  
*Yes, and don't stay too long in the hotel bar tonight, will you?*

**Anthony McLeod** Jeg skal be Janice passe på meg som en smed!  
*I'll ask Janice to keep a close watch on me!*

## Chapter 9

In this chapter you will learn:

- some more conjunctions: the subordinating conjunctions, which introduce a subordinate clause
- more about word order, including the order of words in a subordinate clause
- the conditional tense, which often translates the English 'would'
- the use of om to mean 'whether' and at to mean 'that'
- some names of countries and nationalities, and the prepositions used with place names

### 46 More about conjunctions

The subordinating conjunctions are used to express relationships involving *time*, *cause*, *condition*, etc. The clause they introduce is known as a subordinate clause. Here are some common Norwegian conjunctions.

#### Time

da	when	for	before
når	when/whenever	etterat	after
idet	as	siden	since
mens	while	inntil	till, until

Note that the Norwegian conjunctions **da** and **når** are both translated by the English 'when'. Some guidance as to their use is therefore helpful for the English student.

**Da** is used to talk about something that happened once, in the past:

**Da vi kom hjem, spiste vi middag.**  
When we came home we had dinner.

**Når** expresses what usually happens:

**Når hun kommer på besøk, har hun alltid med seg godter til barna.**  
When (*or* Whenever) she comes to see us she always brings sweets for the children.

**Når** can also express what used to happen (regularly) in the past:

**Når hun kom på besøk, hadde hun alltid meg seg noen godter til barna.**  
When (*or* Whenever) she came to see us she always brought some sweets for the children.

**Når** is additionally used when we are talking about what is going to happen in the future:

**Når du kommer frem, må du sende meg et kort.**  
When you arrive you must send me a postcard.

If you find these ‘rules’ difficult to remember, don’t forget the old rule of the thumb: **den gang** (‘at that time’) – **da**, but: **hver gang** (‘every time’) – **når**.

Here are some examples of the use of other time conjunctions.

**Idet jeg gikk over gaten, kom en stor varebil svingende inn i gaten fra venstre.**  
As I crossed the street a big van came swinging into the street from the left.

**Dette hendte meg to ganger mens jeg var i Norge.**  
This happened to me twice while I was in Norway.

**Jeg hadde hørt om trafikksituasjonen i Norge før jeg forlot England.**  
I had heard about the traffic situation in Norway before I left England.

**Det var verre enn jeg hadde fryktet.**  
It was worse than I had feared.

*Concession*  
**skjønt** } although  
**enda** } even if  
**selv om**

**Enda han hadde hodepine, fortsatte han å arbeide.**  
Although he had a headache he went on working.

*Intention*  
**så at** so that, in order that

**Han gjorde det for at alle skulle bli glade.**  
He did it so that (*or* in order that) everybody should be happy.

*Consequence*  
**så at** so that (as a result of which)  
**slik at**

**Alt var blitt ordnet på forhånd, slik at ingenting gikk galt.**  
Everything had been arranged beforehand so that (as a result) nothing went wrong.

*Comparison*  
**så ( ... som)** as ... as  
**som om** as if  
**jo ... desto** } the ... the  
**jo ... jo**  
**enn** than

**De kom så snart (som) de kunne.**  
They came as soon as they could.

**Han lot som om ingenting hadde hendt.**  
He acted as if nothing had happened.

**Jo før, jo bedre.**  
The sooner the better.

*Cause*

fordi because  
ettersom as  
siden since

Jeg må ligge i sengen i dag fordi jeg ikke føler meg bra.  
I have to stay in bed today because I'm not feeling well.

Jeg er ikke overrasket, siden du har arbeidet så hardt i det siste.  
I'm not surprised since you've been working so hard lately.

*Condition*

hvis } if  
dersom } if  
hvis ikke if not  
med mindre unless

Hvis (or Dersom) du trenger en bil, kan du leie en.  
If you need a car you can hire one.

Jeg vil ikke gjøre det med mindre jeg må.  
I won't do it unless I have to.

## Vocabulary

neste år	next year
å si (sa, sagt) adjø til	to say goodbye to
drosjen	the taxi
vi ville nødig	we'd rather not
å gå (gikk, gått) glipp av	to miss
muligheten	the possibility
å være redd (for)	to be afraid
å angre (-et, -et)	to regret
trett	tired
å synes (-tes)	to think
umaken verdt	worthwhile
hjemreisen	the journey home
så lett som mulig	as easy as possible

## Exercise 40

Insert the right conjunction into the following sentences:

- 1 (When) jeg er i Oslo, besøker jeg alltid Munch-Museet.
- 2 (When) jeg var i Oslo i fjor, besøkte jeg Munch-Museet.
- 3 (When) jeg kommer til Oslo neste år, skal jeg besøke Munch-Museet.
- 4 Jeg besøkte Munch-Museet (while) jeg var i Oslo.
- 5 (As) jeg kom inn i museet, møtte jeg noen venner.
- 6 (After) vi hadde sett bildene, spiste vi lunsj i restauranten.
- 7 (Before) vi forlot restauranten, sa vi adjø til våre venner.
- 8 (Because) vi ville se Vigelandsparken, tok vi en drosje.
- 9 (Since) vi ikke hadde sett den før, ville vi nødig gå glipp av denne muligheten.
- 10 (If) vi ikke så den denne gangen, er jeg redd vi ville angre det.
- 11 (Even if) vi var litt trette, synes jeg det var umaken verdt.
- 12 (In order that) hjemreisen skulle bli så lett som mulig, hadde vi allerede pakket koffertene.

## 47 More about word order

You have already seen that the verb always comes before the subject in questions. This is called inversion. Inversion also takes place in main clauses preceded by a subordinate clause – as you saw in the examples in sec. 46:

Da vi kom hjem (*subord. clause*), spiste vi middag (*main clause*).  
 Enda han hadde hodepine, fortsatte han å arbeide.  
 But if the main clause comes first, there is no inversion:  
 Vi spiste middag da vi kom hjem.  
 Han fortsatte å arbeide enda han hadde hodepine.

Note also that the subject of the main clause is placed between the auxiliary and the principal verb in the compound tenses:

Da vi kom hjem, hadde han spist middag.  
 When we came home he had had dinner.

Når vi kommer hjem, vil vi spise middag.  
 When we come home we shall have dinner.

Inversion also takes place after direct speech and quoted statements:

'Hold deg fast i pelsen min,' sa han.  
 'Hold on to my fur,' he said.  
 Det er et eventyr, forstår du.  
 It's a fairy tale, you see.

## Vocabulary

varene	the goods
til utlandet	abroad
pakkingen	the packing
faktoren	the factor
å pakke (-et, -et)	to pack
fabrikken	the factory
de blir håndtert	they are handled
å nå (-dde, -dd)	to reach
underrette (-et, -et)	to inform
fabrikanten	the manufacturer
med én gang	at once
et fullstendig vrak	a complete write-off
skaden	the damage
betydelig	considerable

det er ingen vits i	there is no point in
å produsere (-te, -t)	to produce
å bli solgt	to be sold
til en rimelig pris	at a fair price
innen	within
rimelig	reasonable
tiden, tidsperioden	the period of time
å besvare (-te, -t)	to answer
å stille (-te, -t) spørsmål	to ask questions
mye, atskillig	a lot
uhellet	the accident
å hende (-dte, -dt)	to occur
å rapportere (-te, -t)	to report
forsikringsselskapet	the insurance company

## Exercise 41

Translate:

- When we send goods abroad, packing is an important factor.
- After the goods are packed in the factory, they are never handled again until they reach the destination.
- If we find that something is wrong with the goods we must inform the manufacturers at once.
- Although the car was not a complete write-off, the damage was considerable.
- There is no point in producing goods unless they can be sold at a fair price within a reasonable period of time.
- 'I'll answer your questions if I can,' she said.
- Asking questions is a lot easier than answering them, you know.
- If an accident occurs, you must report the damage to the insurance company.

## 48 The conditional tense

This tense is like the English 'would + infinitive' and is formed with *skulle* or *ville* (see sec. 29) followed by the infinitive of the principal verb:

Hun ville (or skulle) komme hvis hun kunne.  
She would come if she could.

Hvis hun ikke kunne komme, skulle (or ville)  
hun ringe meg.  
If she couldn't come she would give me a ring.

Hvis jeg var deg, ville jeg ringe henne.  
If I were you I would give her a ring.

Note also the use of the conditional in polite requests, the equivalent of the English 'I'd like':

Jeg skulle ha noen konvolutter, et lokalkart ...  
I'd like some envelopes, a map of the area ...

Jeg ville gjerne ha litt te.  
I'd like some tea.

### Vocabulary

drosjen	the taxi
betingelsene	the terms
akseptabel	acceptable
tilbudet	the proposal
(be)stjele (-stjal, -stjålet)	to steal
å bli bestjålet	to have one's money stolen
å tilkalle (-lte, -lt)	to call
politiet	the police
baderakten	the swimsuit
T-skjorten	the tee-shirt
shortsen	the pair of shorts

## Exercise 42

A Answer the questions as follows:

Hva ville du gjøre hvis du vant det store lodd?  
What would you do if you won the big prize?

(tour the world)

Model answer:

Hvis jeg vant det store lodd, ville jeg dra på jord-  
omseiling.

- 1 Hva ville du gjøre hvis bussen var forsinket?  
(take a taxi)
- 2 Hva ville du gjøre hvis du ikke hadde penger?  
(use my credit card)
- 3 Hva ville herr Hansen gjøre hvis betingelsene  
ikke var akseptable? (ask for a new proposal)
- 4 Hva ville din engelske venn gjøre hvis han hadde  
mye tid? (learn Norwegian)
- 5 Hva ville du gjøre hvis du ble bestjålet?  
(call the police)

B Translate:

I'd like a swimsuit, a tee-shirt and a pair of shorts.

## 49 More about 'if' clauses

You've just seen how **hvis** is used in conditional sentences to express 'if'. But 'if' is also expressed by **om** when it is the equivalent of 'whether':

De spurte henne om hun kunne komme.

They asked her if (i.e. whether) she could come.

Hun visste ikke om det ville bli mulig for henne  
å komme.

She didn't know whether it would be possible  
for her to come.

## 50 'That' clauses

'That' clauses are formed in Norwegian in the same way as in English, with or without the conjunction *at* 'that'.

- Jeg visste ikke (at) du var kommet.  
I didn't know (that) you had arrived.
- De fortalte oss at det ikke var sant.  
They told us (that) it wasn't true.

## Vocabulary

prisen	the price
å være redd for (at)	to be afraid (that)
så mye	that much
å håpe (-et, -et)	to hope
å senke (-et, -et)	to lower
å passe (-et, -et)	to fit
å prøve (-de, -d)	to try

### Exercise 43

Translate:

- 1 I think (that) the price is too high.
- 2 I am afraid (that) I cannot pay that much.
- 3 I hope (that) you will lower the price.
- 4 I wonder whether these shoes will fit me.
- 5 Can I try them on and see if they fit?

## 51 Countries and nationalities

Here are the names of some countries, most of them European:

Amerika	America
Belgia	Belgium
Canada	Canada
Danmark	Denmark
England	England
Finland	Finland
De forente stater	The United States
Frankrike	France
Hellas	Greece
India	India
Irland (Eire)	Ireland
Italia	Italy
Japan	Japan
'Europe' itself is <i>Europa</i> .	

The adjectives denoting nationality are written without a capital letter and end in -sk: *amerikansk* 'American', *belgisk* 'Belgian', *dansk* 'Danish', *engelsk* 'English', etc.

Note particularly: *kanadisk* (with a k) 'Canadian', but: *Canada* (with a c) 'Canada'. And *europeisk* is 'European'.

The corresponding nouns (again without a capital letter) mostly end in -e, -er or -mann:

(en) belgier	(a) Belgian	(en) italiener	(an) Italian
(en) danske	(a) Dane	(en) svenske	(a) Swede
(en) engelskmann		(en) franskmann	
(an) Englishman		(a) Frenchman	

## 52 *I* and *på* with geographical names

To learn the correct use of Norwegian prepositions is not easy, even for a native of Norway. This applies particularly to the use of *i* 'in' and *på* 'at', 'on', in front of geographical names. But we can give you a few guidelines, to be supplemented by your own observations.

#### *Foreign towns, countries and continents*

I is normally used with these:

i London, i Danmark, i Storbritannia, i Europa

But before names of islands we generally use på:  
på Grønland (Greenland), på Island (Iceland), på Cuba.

#### *Norwegian towns and places*

I is generally used with coastal towns:

i Bergen, i Haugesund, i Tromsø

På is used with inland towns:

på Hamar, på Kongsvinger, på Lillehammer

Small places usually appear with på:

på Roa, på Tynset, på Elverum

But names of places ending in -dal, -elv, -vik generally appear with i:

i Oppdal, i Ulvik, i Målselv.

#### *Norwegian districts and regions*

These normally appear with i:

i Finnmark, i Hordaland, i Østfold, i Østerdalen,  
i Telemark, i Hallingdal

But there are important exceptions, such as:

på Østlandet, på Vestlandet, på Toten, på Ringerike.

### Vocabulary

for eksempel

maksimumtemperaturen

innlandet

varmt

Nord-Norge

Sør-Norge

for instance

the maximum temperature  
(the) inland, the interior

hot

Northern Norway

Southern Norway

### Exercise 44

#### A Translate:

- 1 On the coast, for instance in Bodø and in Bergen, it is not as cold in the winter and not as warm in the summer as in Oslo and in Kongsberg.
- 2 In other parts of the country, for instance in Finnmark, in Valdres and in Østerdalen, the winter is very long.
- 3 You will find the highest maximum temperatures in the interior, for instance in Telemark and in Hallingdal. But sometimes it can be as hot in Northern Norway as in Southern Norway – in Sørlandet and in Østlandet.

#### B Give these places in Norwegian, with the corresponding adjectives and nouns of nationality (Model answer: *Belgia - belgisk - en belgier*):

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1 Sweden  | 5 Italy  |
| 2 England | 6 Europe |
| 3 Canada  | 7 Japan  |
| 4 America |          |

#### C Fill in either i or på

- Paris, – Java, – New Zealand, – Australia,
- Ålandsøyene (the Åland Islands) – Tromsø,
- Haugesund, – Kongsvinger, – Hordaland,
- Vestlandet

## Vocabulary

å ønske (-et, -et)	to wish
å ligne (-et, -et)	to be like
seilbåten	the sailing boat
å reise (-te, -t) jorden rundt	to tour the world
fjern	far-off
uoppdaget	unexplored
kulturen	the civilisation
kusinen	the (female) cousin
være i stand til	to be able to
levemåten	the way of life
helgen	the weekend
leksene (pl.)	the homework
fetteren	the (male) cousin
treneren	the coach
legen	the doctor
å støtte (-et, -et)	to support
å reise (-te, -t)	to travel
å vinne (vant, vunnet)	to win
å ta motet fra	to discourage
å slanke (-et, -et) seg	to slim
godtene (pl.)	the sweets
å trenere (-te, -t)	to train
lykkelig, glad	happy
så mye	that much
helsen	the health

## Conversation

### Hvem ville du ligne?

*Whom would you want to be like?*

- Hanna Hvem ville du ligne, David, hvis du kunne velge?  
*Whom would you want to be like, David, if you had the choice?*
- David Jeg ville ligne Fridtjof Nansen eller Thor Heyerdahl.  
*I'd want to be like Fridtjof Nansen or Thor Heyerdahl.*
- Hanna Og hva ville du gjøre?  
*And what would you do?*
- David Jeg ville bygge en stor seilbåt. Jeg ville reise jorden rundt. Jeg ville se fjerne land og studere uutforskede kulturer. Jeg ville skrive bøker om det, og jeg ville bli rik!  
*I'd build a big sailing boat. I'd tour the world. I'd see far-off countries and study unexplored civilisations. I'd write books about it, and I'd get rich!*
- Hanna Jeg er lei for det, kjære fetter, men jeg tror ikke du noensinne vil være i stand til å gjøre alt det.  
*I'm sorry, dear cousin, but I don't think you would ever be able to do all that.*
- David Hvorfor ikke?  
*Why not?*
- Hanna Fordi du aller først ville bli nødt til å forandre din levemåte, stå opp tidligere, ta en kald dusj hver morgen, gå på ski i fjellene hver helg, ikke se så ofte på fjernsyn og gjøre hjemmeksene dine bedre!



*Because, first of all, you'd have to change your way of life: get up earlier, take a cold shower every morning, go skiing in the mountains every weekend, watch television less often and do your homework better!*

**David** Og du, min kjære kusine, hvem ville du ligne?  
*And you, my dear cousin, whom would you want to be like?*

**Hanna** Jeg ville ligne Grete Waitz. Jeg ville ha mine egne trenere og leger rundt meg og en snill ektemann til å støtte meg. Jeg ville reise en hel del, og jeg ville vinne New York Marathon ti ganger. Jeg ville skrive bøker om det, og jeg ville bli rik!  
*I'd want to be like Grete Waitz. I'd have my own coaches and doctor around me and a kind husband to support me. I'd travel a lot, and I'd win the New York Marathon ten times. I'd write books about it, and I'd get rich!*

**David** Jeg ønsker ikke å ta motet fra deg, Hanna, men du ville aldri klare å gjøre det.  
*I don't want to discourage you, Hanna, but you would never be able to do that.*

**Hanna** Hvorfor ikke?  
*Why not?*

**David** Fordi, som du sa, du ville bli nødt til å forandre din levemåte. Du ville bli nødt til å slanke deg, spise mindre godter og mer grønnsaker og frukt, trenre i minst tre timer om dagen og gå til sengs senest klokken ti.  
*Because, as you said, you'd have to change your way of life. You'd have to slim, eat fewer sweets and more vegetables and fruit, train for at least three hours a day and go to bed at ten o'clock at the latest!*

**Hanna** Tror du vi ville bli lykkeligere om vi forandret levemåten vår så mye?  
*Do you think we'd be happier if we changed our way of life that much?*

**David** Det vet jeg ikke. Men vi ville sikkert få en bedre helse!  
*I don't know. But we would certainly be healthier (lit. be in better health)!*

# Chapter 10

In Chapter 10 you will meet:

- a new verb form, the passive, and some verbs which always appear in the passive form
- the present participle (the '-ing' form in English) and ways in which it is used
- some further uses of the prepositions *i*, *på* and *om*

## 53 The passive voice

The passive is often used when we are less interested in who did the action than in the object of it. For example: 'The house was painted', 'The road had been widened'.

In Norwegian the passive is composed of the auxiliary *bli* and the past participle of the principal verb. The agent or doer of the action, if mentioned, is preceded by the preposition *av* 'by'.

The passive voice can be used in all the tenses:

- Present tense:* **Huset blir malt.** The house is (being) painted.  
*Past tense:* **Huset ble malt.** The house was (being) painted.  
*Perfect tense:* **Huset er blitt malt.** The house has been painted.  
*Pluperfect:* **Huset var blitt malt.** The house had been painted.  
*Future:* **Huset skal/vil bli malt.** The house will be painted.  
*Conditional:* **Huset skulle/ville bli malt.** The house would be painted.

**Huset var malt.** The longer form given above is used to emphasise the action; this shorter form emphasises the result.

NOTE: In the perfect tense we often say **Huset er malt** and in the pluperfect

As an alternative to the forms shown above we have the so-called '**s-passiv**'. It is used mostly in the written language and occurs most often in the following tenses:

*Present tense:* **Huset males.** The house is (being) painted.  
*Future:* **Huset skal/vil males.** The house will be painted.

*Conditional:* **Huset skulle/ville males.** The house would be painted.

After modal auxiliaries (sec. 29) the **s-passiv** is commonly used in colloquial speech as well as in written language and is even preferred to the longer form:

**Huset bør males.** The house should be painted.  
**Arbeidet må gjøre.** The work has to be done.

**Billetter kan kjøpes ved inngangen.**  
Tickets can be bought at the entrance.

## 54 Active verbs with a passive form

Some very useful verbs have an active meaning but a passive form, for example

- |                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| å synes to think, seem | å trives to thrive, feel happy |
| å finnes to be, exist  | å minnes to remember           |
| å lykkes to succeed    |                                |

Remember the expression **det finnes** 'there is/are' (sec. 37).

In the past tense **-tes** or **-des** is added to the stem of these verbs: **syntes**, **fantes** (note the vowel change), **lyktes**, **trivdes**, **mintes**. The past participle has the same form as the infinitive.

Examples:

Jeg synes du skulle lese denne boken.

I think you should read this book.

Hun syntes å være ganske fornøyd.

She seemed (to be) quite content.

Det fantes ingen annen utvei.

There was no other way out.

Det har lykkes ham å nå sitt mål.

He has succeeded in reaching his goal.

Vi vil minnes de gamle gode dager.

We shall remember the good old days.

De trodde du ville trives i den nye jobben (din).

They thought you would be happy in your new job.

## Vocabulary

Nobelkomiteen

the Nobel Committee

formannen

the chairman

å overrekke (-rakte, -rakt)

to hand out

å vinne (vant, vunnet)

to win

gangen

the time

restbeløpet

the arrears

innen fristens utløp

within the prescribed term

å synes synd på

to feel sorry for

## Exercise 45

A Put the following into the passive:

- 1 Nobelkomiteens formann overrekker Fredsprisen.
- 2 Grete Waitz har vunnet New York Marathon ni ganger.
- 3 Kunden betalte restbeløpet innen fristens utløp.
- 4 Vi vil ikke lenger produsere denne stolen.

B Complete the sentences by translating the English verb in brackets:

- 1 Jeg håper du vil (succeed).
- 2 De (felt) synd på ham.
- 3 Det er det beste som (is).
- 4 Vi (meet) igjen ved neste korsvei.

## 55 The present participle

The present participle (in English the '-ing' form) is formed by adding -ende to the stem of the verb:

arbeidende working

sovende sleeping

løpende running

hoppende jumping

Note that -d- in -ende is not pronounced.

The present participle is not used to form a continuous tense as in English (sec. 8). It is mostly used as an adjective or an adverb:

en underholdende bok an entertaining book

brennende varm burning hot

sometimes as a noun:

den besökende the visitor

den ansvarshavende the person in charge

Typical of Norwegian is the use of the present participle after verbs like komme 'come', gå 'go', stå 'stand', ligge 'lie' and bli 'stay':

De kom gående/kjørende/løpende.

They came walking/driving/running or They walked/drove/ran up.

**Han gikk haltende av sted.**  
He set off limping or He limped off.

**Hun satt sorgende igjen.**  
She was left mourning.

**Vi ble boende der i noen uker.**  
We stayed there for some weeks.

In English the present participle is used more often than in Norwegian. It sometimes has to be translated by an infinitive or a subordinate clause or by another construction:

**Han så henne komme** (*infinitive*).  
He saw her coming.

**Å se er å tro** (*infinitives*).  
Seeing is believing.

**Jeg ser frem til å høre fra deg** (*infinitive*).  
I look forward to hearing from you.

**Han brakk benet mens han spilte fotball** (*subord. clause*).  
He broke his leg while playing football.

**Da vi kom inn i rommet** (*subord. clause*), fant vi ingen  
til stede.  
Entering the room, we found nobody there.

**De stod der og så på hverandre** (*co-ord. clause*).  
They stood there looking at each other.

## Vocabulary

å renne (rant, rent)	to run
vannet	the water
å fly/flyge (fløy, fløyet)	to fly
fuglen	the bird
å falle (falt, falt)	to fall
å vokse (-te, -t)	to grow
markedet	the market
å skuffe (-et, -et)	to disappoint
å krype (krop, kroppet)	to crawl
mot	towards

å bli (ble, blitt)	to remain
å fortsette (-satte, -satt)	to keep on, continue
å insistere (-te, -t)	to insist
ved å	by
å studere (-te, -t)	to study
på	(with)in
å svømme (-te, -t)	to swim
å seile (-te, -t)	to sail

## Exercise 46

*A Translate:*

- 1 running water
- 2 a flying bird
- 3 falling prices
- 4 a growing market
- 5 a disappointing answer

*B Translate:*

- 1 Two men came crawling towards him.
- 2 The little boy went away crying.
- 3 We remained sitting.
- 4 We heard her singing.
- 5 Having waited for half an hour we saw them leaving the house.
- 6 If you keep on insisting, I shall do it.
- 7 By studying a little every day, you will learn Norwegian in three months.
- 8 Do you like swimming and sailing?

## 56 Compound words

Typical of Norwegian is the almost unlimited possibility of making compound words, particularly nouns. New words are made as required by adding one or two words in front of or after existing words:

jakthunden	the hunting dog
hundehalsbåndet	the dog collar
fabrikkarbeideren	the factory worker
arbeidsbetingelser	working conditions
skolebarna	the schoolchildren
barneoppdragelsen	the education of children
syttdemaitoget	the seventeenth of May procession
fødselsdagspresanger	birthday presents
nyttårshilsener	New Year greetings
sjøfartsnasjonen	the shipping nation
handelsflåten	the merchant fleet
fiskevann	(good) lakes for fishing
snødekt	snow-covered
å forhåndsbestille	to book in advance

As you can see, the compound words are joined together without any hyphen, but sometimes an -e- is inserted (*hundehalsbåndet*, *barneoppdragelsen*) or an -s- (*arbeidsbetingelser*, *nyttårshilsener*).

## Vocabulary

å kreve (-de, -d)	to demand
lønnforhøyelsen	the wage increase
å glede (-et, -et) seg til	to look forward to
slektningene	the relations
i ganske lang tid	for quite a long time

## Exercise 47

Translate:

- 1 A fine hunting dog with a nice dog collar.
- 2 The factory workers demanded a considerable wage increase and better working conditions.
- 3 The schoolchildren are looking forward to the seventeenth of May procession.
- 4 I have sent birthday presents and New Year greetings to all my friends and relatives.
- 5 For quite a long time Norway has been one of the leading shipping nations of the world with a considerable merchant fleet.
- 6 Norway has snow-covered mountain tops and many good lakes for fishing.

## 57 More about *i* and *på*

I 'in' and på 'on, 'at', are used to express location in a place, not only in connection with geographical names (sec. 52) but with other nouns as well. Examples:

Vi arbeider på et kontor We are working in an office

på et lager	in a storehouse
på en gård	on a farm
i en bank	in a bank
i en butikk	in a shop
i et firma	in a firm

Vi er	på skolen	We are	at school
	på et møte		at a meeting
	på landet		in the country
	i byen		in town

Vi er	i kirken i selskap i stuen	We are at church at a party in the sitting room
	i entréen i første etasje	in the entrance on the ground floor
	i annen etasje på kjøkkenet på badet på soveværelset	on the first floor in the kitchen in the bathroom in the bedroom

Note that *i* is often used with neuter and *på* with common gender nouns, particularly in connection with names of the different parts of a house.

*I* and *på* are also used to express motion towards a place with an activity in mind:

Vi går	på skolen på kontoret på arbeidet på kino på konsert på ski i byen i butikken i banken i kirken i teater i selskap	We go to school to the office to work to the cinema to a concert skiing to town shopping to the bank to church to the theatre to a party
--------	---	--

## 58 The use of *om*

*Om* can be either a preposition ('about, 'for') or, as you have seen (sec. 49), a conjunction ('if', 'whether'). Here are some examples of *om* used as a preposition:

**De fortalte oss om ulykken.** They told us about the accident.  
**Vi hadde lest om det i avisen.**  
 We had read about it in the newspaper.

**Visste du om det?** Did you know about it?  
**Han bad meg om penger.** He asked me for money.  
**Spurte du henne om råd?** Did you ask her for advice?

*Om* used as a conjunction:

**Jeg undres (på) om du kan hjelpe meg?**  
 I wonder if (or whether) you can help me?  
**Vi vet ikke om det er sant eller ikke.**  
 We don't know whether it's true or not.

## Vocabulary

å regne (-et, -et)	to calculate, to do sums
gjesten	the guest
vertinnen	the hostess
å vite (visste, visst)	to know
jeg vet	I know
å røyke (-te, -t)	to smoke
sikker	sure

## Exercise 48

A Complete with the right prepositions:

- 1 Vi arbeider – et kontor – byen.
- 2 De arbeider – en gård – landet.
- 3 Han arbeider – et lager, hun arbeider – en butikk.
- 4 Barna går – skolen.
- 5 – skolen lærer de å lese, skrive og regne.
- 6 I går gikk vi – selskap. Gjestene var – stuen – første etasje.
- 7 Vertinnen var – kjøkkenet og barna var – soveværelset.

- 8 Liker du å gå – konsert?
- 9 Går dere ofte i kirken?
- B Translate:
- 1 What did they talk about?
  - 2 I don't know anything about it.
  - 3 He asked her if she smoked.
  - 4 She asked him for a cigarette.
  - 5 He was not sure whether he had any cigarettes.

## Vocabulary

trafikken	the traffic
en hårsvredd	a hair's breadth
å kjøre (-te, -t) over	to run over
å passe (-et, -et) seg for	to look out for
gal	crazy
bilføreren	the (car) driver
grønn (grønt)	green
idioten	the idiot
susende	dashing
å huske (-et, -et)	to remember
smart	smart, clever
pingvinen	the penguin
Antarktis	the Antarctic
å unngå (-gikk, -gått)	to avoid
å drepe (-te, -t)	to kill
selen	the seal
å hoppe (-et, -et)	to jump
sjøen	the sea
å fange (-et, -et)	to catch
å ta (tok, tatt)	to take
tåpelig	silly
tanken	the thought
bare tanken på	the mere thought of
vettskremt	terrified

sjokkerende	shocking
opplevelsen	the experience
rattet	the wheel
forbannet på	mad at
fotgjengeren	the pedestrian
å skjelle (-lte, -lt) ut	to curse, scold
grunnen	the reason
frustrert	frustrated
situasjonen	the situation
økende	increasing
biltrafikken	the (car) traffic
kombinert med	combined with
synkende	decreasing
trafikk-kapasiteten	the traffic capacity
å merke (-et, -et) seg	to notice
veireparasjonen	the road repair
å pågå (-gikk, -gått)	to go on
hullet	the hole
krateret	the crater
sperret	barred
enveiskjøringen	the one-way traffic
vant til	used to
å bryte (bret, brutt) sammen	to come to a standstill
å få (fikk, fått) noen til å gjøre noe	to make somebody do something
politikeren	the politician
å ta (tok, tatt) seg sammen	to pull oneself together
å unngå (-gikk, -gått)	to prevent
dum	stupid
årene som kommer	the years to come
optimistisk	optimistic
på lang sikt	in the long term

## CONVERSATION

### I trafikken In the traffic

Anthony McLeod Å, Siri! I morges var jeg bare en hår-bredd fra å bli overkjørt av en bil!  
*Oh, Siri! This morning I was only a hair's breadth from being run over by a car!*

Siri McLeod Sa jeg ikke at du skulle passe deg for de gale bilførerne i Oslo? Og jeg vet hva jeg snakker om. Jeg er selv en av dem!  
*Didn't I tell you to look out for the crazy drivers in Oslo? And I know what I'm talking about. I'm one of them myself!*

Anthony McLeod Men jeg passet meg jo! Og jeg gikk akkurat over gaten på grønt da den idioten kom susende rundt hjørnet fra venstre!  
*But I did look out! And I was just crossing the street on green when that idiot came dashing round the corner from the left!*

Siri McLeod Husker du hva jeg fortalte deg om de smarte pingvinene i Antarktis og hvordan de unngår å bli drept av selene? Hvordan de alltid lar en annen pingvin hoppe i sjøen først og venter for å se om den blir tatt.  
*Remember what I told you about the smart penguins in the Antarctic and how they avoid being killed by the seals? How they always let another penguin jump into the sea first and wait to see if he is caught.*

Anthony McLeod Ikke vær tåpelig! Bare tanken på hva som kunne hendt, gjør meg fremdeles vettskremt!

*Don't be silly! The mere thought of what could have happened still makes me terrified!*

Siri McLeod Tilgi meg! Det må ha vært en sjokkerende opplevelse!  
*Forgive me! It must have been a shocking experience!*

Anthony McLeod Men hva er det som gjør de norske bilførerne så gale?  
*But what makes the Norwegian drivers so crazy?*

Siri McLeod Jeg vet ikke. Jeg er selv litt lik dem. Når jeg sitter bak rattet, er jeg alltid forbannet på fotgjengerne, men så snart jeg kommer ut på gaten igjen, oppdager jeg at jeg skjeller ut bilførerne.  
*I don't know. I'm a bit like them myself. Sitting behind the wheel I'm always mad at the pedestrians, but as soon as I get out onto the street again I find myself cursing the drivers.*

Anthony McLeod Men det må da være en grunn til det?  
*But there must be a reason for it?*

Siri McLeod Ja, jeg tror vi alle er frustrert over situasjonen, en økende biltrafikk kombinert med en synkende trafikk-kapasitet.  
*Well, I think we are all frustrated by the situation, increasing traffic combined with decreasing traffic capacity.*

Anthony McLeod Ja, jeg har alt merket meg alle veireparasjonene som pågår, alle hullene ...  
*Yes, I've already noticed all the road repairs going on, all the holes ...*

Siri McLeod Ikke hull, krater!  
*Not holes, craters!*



- Anthony McLeod** Og likevel ser det alltid ut som om du finner ut hvilke gater som er sperret og hvilke som bare har enveiskjøring.  
**Hvordan klarer du det?**  
*And yet you always seem to find out which roads are barred and which have only one-way traffic! How do you manage that?*
- Siri McLeod** Det er ikke så lett, men en blir jo vant til det, vet du.  
*It isn't easy, but you get used to it, you know!*
- Anthony McLeod** Er dere ikke redd for at trafikken i denne byen en dag vil bryte fullstendig sammen?  
*Aren't you afraid that some day the traffic in this city will come to a complete standstill?*
- Siri McLeod** Jo, det er vi alle sammen! Men kanskje det er nettopp det vi trenger for å få politikerne til å ta seg sammen og gjøre noe for å unngå det!  
*Yes, we all are. But perhaps that's what we need to make the politicians pull themselves together and do something to prevent it!*
- Anthony McLeod** Hvordan kan de være så dumme?  
*How can they be that stupid?*
- Siri McLeod** Det er de selvfølgelig ikke! De har alt gjort mye, og de kommer til å gjøre mer i årene som kommer. Jeg er optimistisk – men på lang sikt!  
*Of course they aren't! They've already done a lot, and they'll do more in the years to come. I'm optimistic – but in the long term!*

## Chapter 11

This penultimate chapter includes:

- more expressions for talking about time
- the use of **for å** to mean 'in order to'
- further uses of the pronoun **det**
- how the English 'to be' may be translated by the verbs **ligge, sitte, stå** or **gå**

### 59 More expressions of time

You have already learnt many ways of talking about time (secs 20, 32 and 33). Here are some other useful time expressions:

for ... siden ago

for fjorten dager siden a fortnight ago

for tre dager siden three days ago

for en time siden an hour ago

om in, for (... yet)

om fjorten dager in a fortnight

om en ukes tid in a week's time

forst om tre dager not for three days yet

i for

Streiken har vart i tre uker.

The strike has been going on for three weeks.

Den vil sannsynligvis vare i to uker til.

It will probably last for another two weeks.

på for

Hun har ikke fått noe brev fra England på to måneder.  
She hasn't had any letter from England for two months.  
'Hølde på (med)', 'være i ferd med' etc.

As you have seen, there is no continuous tense in Norwegian. However, there are other ways of indicating that an action lasts for some time:

De holder på å gjøre lekser.  
They are doing their homework.

Han er i ferd med å bygge et nytt hus.  
He is building a new house.

Hun sitter og leser.  
She is reading.

Han står og henger.  
He is hanging about.

å skulle til å to be about to, be on the point of

Jeg skulle akkurat til å skrive til ham da han ringte meg.  
I was just about to write to him when he phoned me.

Han skulle til å oppgi alt håp da politiet kom til umsetning.  
He was on the point of giving up all hope when the police came to his rescue.

## 60 For å ('in order to')

'To', 'in order to', 'so as to' are expressed by **for å**:

Han gikk i banken for å heve en reisesjekk.  
He went to the bank to cash a traveller's cheque.

Hun tok på seg brillene for å se bedre.  
She put on her spectacles so as to see better.

But:

De bad om en skje (til) å spise med.  
They asked for a spoon to eat with.

Hun gav meg penger (til) å kjøpe den for.  
She gave me money to buy it with.

## Vocabulary

å handle (-et, -et)	to do some shopping
noe godt	something nice
å overraske (-et, -et)	to surprise

## Exercise 49

A Complete the sentences by translating the words in brackets:

- 1 Vi dro fra England (a week ago).
- 2 Vi hadde studert norsk (for three months).
- 3 Vi kommer til å bli i Norge (for two weeks).
- 4 Toget går (in two hours).
- 5 Vi reiser (not for half an hour).
- 6 Jeg har ikke røkt (for two years).

B Translate:

- 1 Han var i ferd med å pakke kofferten.
- 2 Han skulle til å forlate landet.
- 3 De satt og spiste middag.
- 4 Vi stod og ventet på bussen.

C Translate:

- 1 She went to town to do some shopping.
- 2 She wanted to buy something nice in order to surprise her family.
- 3 But she had no money to buy (it) with.

## 61 More about *det*

The demonstrative pronoun **det** (sec. 13) is commonly used in colloquial speech, and cannot always be translated by 'that'. Here are some examples of how **det** is rendered in English:

Tror du **det**? Do you think so?  
Jeg håper **det**. I hope so.  
Har han **det**? Has he?  
Nei, han har ikke **det**. No, he hasn't.  
Kan dere **det**? Can you?  
Ja, vi kan **det**. Yes, we can.  
Er du trett? **Det** er jeg også. Are you tired? So am I.

## Vocabulary

å bli syk	to be taken ill
sykehuset	the hospital
bra	all right
nå	by now

### Exercise 50

Translate:

- 1 Does Miss Holm live here?
- 2 No, she doesn't.
- 3 Has she been taken ill?
- 4 Yes, I'm afraid so.
- 5 Is she in hospital?
- 6 Yes, she is.
- 7 I hoped she would be all right by now.
- 8 So did we. But I think she is a little better.

## 62 *Det* as a preliminary subject

**Det** can be used as a preliminary subject with a real subject later in the sentence, as you have already seen in sec. 37, in the expressions **det er** and **det finnes** 'there is/are'. In Norwegian, however, this type of construction is also used with verbs of motion like **komme**, **gå**, **starte**, **kjøre** etc. and with **ligge**, **stå**, **sitte** (see sec. 63):

**Det kom en mann nedover veien.**  
There was a man coming down the road.

**Det myldrer av mennesker på gaten.**  
The street is swarming with people (lit. It is swarming with people in the street).

**Det startet en bil utenfor huset.**  
A car started (lit. There was a car starting) outside the house.

**Det** is not only used at the beginning of the sentence:

**Den morgenen gikk det bare en buss.**  
That morning there was only one bus passing.

## 63 The verbs *ligge*, *sitte*, *stå* and *gå*

The verbs **ligge**, **sitte**, **stå** and **gå** cannot always be translated by their English equivalents, as is shown in the following examples. Often English uses the verb 'to be'.

å ligge to lie

**Oslo ligger ved bunnen av Oslofjorden.**  
Oslo is situated (or lies) at the head of the Oslofjord.

**Det ligger et supermarket på hjørnet.**  
There is a supermarket on the corner.

**De ligger i sengen.**  
They are in bed.

**Det ligger en kniv, en skje og en gaffel på bordet.**  
There are a knife, a spoon and a fork on the table.

å stå to stand

Det står i avisens at ... It says in the newspaper that ...

Telefonnummeret står i (telefon)katalogen.

The telephone number is in the book.

Det står et glass og en flaske på bordet.

There are a glass and a bottle on the table.

Bilen står i garasjen.

The car is in the garage.

Han stod til eksamen.

He passed his exam.

å sitte to sit

Nøkkelen sitter i låsen. The key is in the lock.

Skipet sitter fast i isen. The ship is stuck in the ice.

Vil du sitte på? Would you like a lift?

Han satt og leste. He was reading.

å gå to go, walk

Tiden går. Time passes (or goes by).

Det gikk som ventet. It turned out as expected.

Det går ham godt. He is doing well.

Det går ikke. It doesn't work.

Hvordan gikk det på skolen i dag?

How did you get on at school today?

## Vocabulary

å ligge (lå, ligget)

to be situated, to lie

sør for

south of

siden

the side

kjøkkenbenken

the kitchen unit

å stå (stod, stått)

to stand

trappeoppgangen

the stairway

isen

the ice

å sitte (satt, sittet)

to be sitting, to sit

å sitte dårlig

to have a bad seat

## Exercise 51

Translate (using one of these verbs in every sentence:  
*ligge, stå, sitte, gå*):

- 1 There's a church on the other side of the marketplace.
- 2 There's a knife on the kitchen unit.
- 3 Tønsberg is situated south of Oslo.
- 4 There's a vase on the table.
- 5 There's a bicycle in the stairway.
- 6 What's in the newspaper today?
- 7 There's a woman waiting in the entrance hall.
- 8 He's having breakfast.
- 9 Did you have a bad seat?
- 10 Are you doing well?
- 11 How did it turn out?
- 12 The days passed so quickly.

## Vocabulary

restauranten

the restaurant

menyen

the menu

kelneren

the waiter

forretten

the starter

suppen

the soup

onkelen

the uncle

begge

both

hovedretten

the main dish

å legge (la, lagt) på seg

to put on weight

desserten

the dessert

saltvannsfisken

the salt-water fish

skalldyret

the shellfish

å behage (-et, -et)

to please

gjør som du vil!	do as you please!
å foretrekke (-trakk, -trukket)	to prefer
kokt	boiled
torsken	the cod
stekt	fried
sjøtungen	the sole
å bestemme (-te, -t) seg	to choose, make a decision
niesen	the niece
den unge damen	the young lady
rødvinen	the red wine
karamellpuddingen	the creme caramel
multekaken	the cloudberry cake
regningen	the bill
et øyeblikk	one moment
De har rett med hensyn til	you're right about

## Conversation

### I en restaurant In a restaurant

Anthony McLeod	Kan vi få menyen? <i>Can we have the menu, please?</i>
Kelneren Waiter	Vær så god! <i>Here you are, sir.</i>
Anthony McLeod	Takk skal De ha. La meg se. Hva vil du ha som forrett, Hanna? Eller ville du foretrekke en suppe? <i>Thank you very much. Let me see. What would you like for a starter, Hanna? Or would you prefer a soup?</i>
Hanna McLeod	Ikke noen forrett og ikke noen suppe til meg, onkel Anthony. Jeg synes vi begge skulle gå rett på hovedretten. Etter en uke i Oslo har du alt begynt å legge på deg!

*No starter and no soup for me, uncle Anthony.  
I think we should both go straight on to the main dish. After one week in Oslo you're already putting on weight!*

Anthony McLeod *Det har jeg ikke! Men jeg klarer meg meget godt uten forrett hvis jeg bare får en god dessert.*  
*I'm not! But I can very well do without a starter if only I get a good dessert.*

Hanna McLeod *Da vil jeg gjerne prøve noe fra havet, saltvannsfisk eller skaldyr.*  
*Then I'd like to try something from the sea, some salt-water fish or shellfish.*

Anthony McLeod *Gjør som du vil, men jeg skal ikke ha skaldyr. Jeg foretrekker kokt torsk.*  
*Do as you please, but no shellfish for me!  
I prefer the boiled cod.*

Hanna McLeod *Og jeg stekt sjøtunge.*  
*And I the fried sole.*

Anthony McLeod *Kelner!*  
*Waiter!*

Kelneren *Har De bestemt Dem?*  
*You've chosen, sir?*

Anthony McLeod *Ja, stekt sjøtunge til min niese og kokt torsk til meg.*  
*Yes, fried sole for my niece and boiled cod for me.*

Kelneren *Javel, og hva vil dere ha å drikke?*  
*Very good, and what would you like to drink?*

Anthony McLeod *Coca-cola til den unge damen og et glass rødvin til meg. Husets vin, takk!*  
*Coca-Cola for the young lady and a glass of red wine for me. The house wine, please.*

Kelneren *Hva vil De ha til dessert?*  
*What would you like for dessert?*



- Hanna McLeod Karamellpudding til meg, takk.  
*Creme caramel for me, please.*
- Anthony McLeod Hvordan er multekaken Deres?  
*How's your cloudberry cake?*
- Kelneren Det finnes ingen bedre!  
*It's second to none, sir.*
- Anthony McLeod Multekake til meg, og to kaffe. Og så regningen, takk.  
*Cloudberry cake for me, and two coffees. And then the bill, please.*
- Kelneren Et øyeblink.  
*One moment, sir.*
- Kelneren Hvordan smakte middagen?  
*How did you like your dinner?*
- Hanna McLeod Det var meget godt alt sammen.  
*It was all very good.*
- Anthony McLeod Og De hadde rett med hensyn til multekaken.  
*And you were right about the cloudberry cake.*

## Chapter 12

The final chapter of your course covers:

- some expressions consisting of verb plus preposition
- the use of past participles as adjectives
- some characteristics of colloquial Norwegian speech
- phrases for greeting and congratulating people
- how to start and end a letter

### 64 More about prepositions

In secs 57 and 58 you learned about the use of *i*, *på* and *om*. Here are some verbs and expressions followed by *av*, *etter*, *for*, *med*, and *over*:

le av	laugh at
lide av	suffer from
være respektert av (for)	be respected by (for)
være stolt av	be proud of
lengte etter	long for
stri (streve) med	work hard at
interessere seg for	be interested in
klage over (or på)	complain about
være skuffet over	be disappointed with (or at)
glede seg over	rejoice at

In Norwegian verbs and expressions followed by prepositions are used with the infinitive, taking the place of the English '-ing' form:

Hun gledet seg til å komme. She looked forward to coming.  
Han var redd for å dø. He was afraid of dying.  
De var trette av å gå. They were tired of walking.

In some cases the Norwegian expression has a preposition where there is no preposition in English; for example, with parts of the body:

Jeg har vondt i hodet. I have a headache.  
Er du kald på føttene? Are your feet cold?  
Vask deg i ansiktet! Wash your face!  
Tørk av deg på bena! Wipe your feet!

## Vocabulary

ros(en)	(the) praise
mer enn	more than
vakker	beautiful
etterkommeren	the descendant
idretten	the sport
å være på høyde med	to keep up with
hemningsløst	without inhibition
seieren	the victory
konkuransen	the competition
umåtelig	immensely
nederlaget	the defeat
(fotball-)dommeren	the referee
å skynde (-dte, -dt) på	to put the blame on
å skade (-et, -et)	to injure
spilleren	the player
laget	the team
å tape (-te, -t)	to lose
å lide (led, lidt) av	to suffer from
landskampen i fotball	the international football match
enorm	enormous
mindreverdighetsføelsen	the inferiority complex
å føle trang til	to feel like
å ligne (-et, -et) på	to resemble
i så henseende	in that respect

## Exercise 52

Translate:

- 1 Mange nordmenn er stolte av sitt land og lengter etter ros fra andre nasjoner.
- 2 De ønsker å bli respektert av andre for mer enn å ha et vakkert land og være etterkommere av de gamle vikingene.
- 3 De interesserer seg meget for idrett og stirr hardt med å være på høyde med andre nasjoner.
- 4 De gleder seg hemningsløst over enhver seier i internasjonale konkuranser og er umåtelig skuffet over ethvert nederlag.
- 5 De klager på dommerer eller skylder på skadete spillere når laget deres taper en landskamp i fotball.
- 6 Noen mennesker tenker at nordmennene må lide av en enorm mindreverdighetsføelse.
- 7 Andre føler trang til å le av det hele og mener at nordmennene ligner på alle andre mennesker i så henseende.

## 65 The past participle used as an adjective

The past participle can be used as an adjective, as shown in the following:

et malt gjerde a painted fence  
en dressert hund a trained dog  
en ventet virkning an expected effect  
et forsikret hus an insured house  
en stjållet veske a stolen handbag  
et brukket ben a broken leg

In the definite form and in the plural an -e is added to the participle, as to other adjectives:

det malte gjerdet, malte gjerder, de malte gjerdene  
den dresserte hunden, dresserte hunder, de dresserte hundene

If, however, the participle ends in **-et**, the t is usually changed into a **d**:

den ventede virkning(en), ventede virknings, de ventede virkningene  
det forsikrede huset, forsikrede hus, de forsikrede husene

Participles of strong verbs often have their ending changed into **-ne**:

den stjålne vesken, stjålne vesker, de stjålne veskene  
det brukne benet, brukne ben, de brukne bena

## Vocabulary

å koke (-te, -t)	to boil
å ribbe (-et, -et)	to pluck
å flå (-dde, -dd)	to skin
bjørnen	the bear
å frigjøre (-gjorde, -gjort)	to liberate
å stryke (strøk, strøket)	to iron
lommetørkleet	the handkerchief

## Exercise 53

A Complete the following, translating the English participle in brackets:

- 1 et (boiled) egg
- 2 en (plucked) kylling
- 3 en (skinned) bjørn
- 4 et (liberated) land
- 5 et (ironed) lommetørkle
- 6 en (frozen) finger

B Give the definite form singular and the indefinite and definite form of the above examples 1, 2 and 6 (Model:  
**et malt gjerde – det malte gjerdet – malte gjerder –**  
**de malte gjerdene**)

## 66 Colloquial speech

Colloquial Norwegian can only be learned through listening and practice. But some knowledge of the tags and small words used in everyday speech could be helpful. The Norwegians, like the English, make frequent use of filler words, to make their speech sound friendly and informal or to modify the meaning of the sentences.

1 Tags are often added to questions and statements (see sec. 61 for the use of **det** here):

**Han er i Norge, er han ikke det?**  
He's in Norway, isn't he?

**Han er ikke hjemme, er han det?**  
He's not at home, is he?

**Du studerer norsk, gjør du ikke det?**  
You study Norwegian, don't you?

**Du synes ikke det er for vanskelig, gjør du det?**  
You don't find it too difficult, do you?

**Det er ganske spennende, ikke sant?**  
It's quite exciting, isn't it?

**Det er litt tidlig, vet du.**  
It's a bit early, you know.

**Møtet er utsatt, tror jeg.**  
The meeting has been postponed, I believe.

**Hun kunne ikke komme, forstår du.**  
She couldn't come, you see.

2 Adverbs are used, frequently without adding any specific meaning: **forresten**, **jo**, **liksom**, **nok**, **så**, **vel**, **da**

**Hvordan har de det, forresten?**  
By the way, how are they?

**Vi er jo venner.**  
After all, we are friends.

**Jeg føler meg liksom (så) svimmel.**  
I feel kind of dizzy.

**Det kommer nok av varmen.**  
That's probably due to the heat.

**Så morsomt at du kunne komme!**  
I'm so glad (that) you could come!

**Han har vel forsøvet seg.**  
He must have overslept, I suppose.

**Ja da!** Certainly!  
**Adjø da!** Bye-bye!  
**Kom nå da!** Oh, come on!  
**Enn jeg da?** What about me?  
**Vær så god da!** Please help yourself!  
**Fy da!** For shame!

3 **Ja**, **jo** and **nei** are used as opening words, not only as answers to questions:

**Ja, det var en sorgelig historie!**  
That was (indeed) a sad affair!

**Jo, det var en snurrig fyr!**  
He was (certainly) a funny chap!

**Nei, har du hørt på maken!**  
The idea of it!

And in the double version:

**Jaja, så får vi gjøre det selv da.**  
OK, then we'll have to do it ourselves.

**Nei nei, hvis du ikke vil så.**  
Oh well, if you don't want to do it.

Nei is also used in exclamations:

**Nei, så snilt av deg!** How kind of you!  
**Nei, vet De hva!** This is too bad! or Oh really!

4 The personal pronoun is used in addressing people:

**Morn, du!** Hello! (Hi!)  
**Bare kom inn, du!** Please come in (won't you!)  
**Sier du det, du?** So that's what you say?  
**Det var moro, det!** That was fun (that was)!  
**Vi klarte det, vi!** We made it!  
**Du er dum, du!** You're a fool (you are)!

## 67 Greetings and congratulations

### Greetings:

Various greetings are used when meeting people, from the more formal greetings like:

**God dag!** Good day!  
**God morgen!** Good morning!  
**God aften (kveld)!** Good evening!

to the informal and familiar ones such as:

**Morn!** Hello!  
**Hei!** Hi!

When we are introduced to people we haven't met before, we often say:

**Hyggelig å hilse på Dem!**  
How do you do? (or Pleased to meet you!)

When we welcome guests to our house we say:

**Velkommen!** Glad you could come!

### *Thanks and congratulations*

The guests say to the hostess or the host after a party:

Takk for meg! Thank you for having me!

or (on more formal occasions) after a meal:

Takk for maten! Thank you for the meal!

And the next time you meet somebody whose house you have been to you say:

Takk for sist! Thank you for the last time!

If you want to congratulate somebody on a special occasion you should say:

Gratulerer! or Til lykke! Congratulations!

### *Leave-taking*

When parting we usually say:

Adjø!	Farvel!	Goodbye!
	Morn da (morna)! (informal)	Bye-bye!
Ha det bra! (formal)		
Ha det! (informal)		Have a good time!
På gjensyn!		So long!
Vi sees!		See you later!
God helg!		Have a good weekend!

### *Wishes*

To somebody who is ill:

God bedring! I hope you'll soon be better!

Some other wishes are:

God fornøyelse! Have a good time!

Lykke til! Good luck!

Hils din bror fra meg! Give my love to your brother!

Some common greetings in letters are:

Kjære herr X/fra X (formal)	{	Dear Sir/Madam
		Dear Mr X/Mrs X
Kjære Susan/John (informal)		Dear Susan/John

And some common closes are:

med hilsen fra (formal)

ærbødigst (formal)

men vennlig hilsen (informal)

kjærlig hilsen fra (informal)

Hils ham fra meg.

With compliments from

Yours faithfully/sincerely

With kind regards

Love from

Remember me to him.

### *Please*

The English 'please' can be translated by Vær så snill (in polite requests) or by Vær så god (expressing permission or consent: 'please do').

In sentences introduced by these expressions we can use either *og* or *å*:

Vær så snill og send meg sukkeret. Or: Vær så snill å sende meg sukkeret.

Please pass me the sugar!

Vær så god og forsyn deg! Or: Vær så god å forsyne deg!

Please help yourself!

### **Vocabulary**

å være fornøyd med

to be happy with

oppholdet

the stay

ikke ... far

not ... till

å berolige (-et, -et)

to calm down

tidlig på året

early in the year

lykke, hell

luck

trist

sad

å gjøre noe med noe

to do something about

som du vil

something

å la (lot, latt) en få vite

as you like

å passe (-et, -et)

to let someone know

to suit

## Exercise 54

A Add tags to the following questions:

- 1 Dere har hatt en hyggelig ferie ...?
- 2 Du er fornøyd med oppholdet i Norge ...?
- 3 Dere skal ikke reise før i morgen ...?
- 4 Dere har ikke glemt noe ...?
- 5 Dere kommer igjen neste år ...?

B Translate:

- 1 We'll come by the end of July, I believe.
- 2 You ought to come in September, you see.
- 3 It's the best time for fishing, you know.

C Translate, using *forresten*, *jo*, *liksom*, *nok* etc.:

- 1 After all, you like fishing.
- 2 Yes, it kind of calms me down.
- 3 By the way, did you get any fish this year?
- 4 No, but it was a bit early in the year, I suppose.
- 5 You'll probably have better luck next year.

D Translate, using *Ja* (or *Jaja*), *Nei* (*Neinei*) as opening words, *da* or personal pronoun (*du*, *jeg*, *hun*, *han*, etc.) at the end of the sentence:

- 1 That was the end of the holiday.
- 2 How sad!

3 Oh well, there is nothing to be done (lit. to do) about that.

4 Give my love to your sister!

5 Certainly!

6 Bye-bye!

7 Have a good time!

8 Do as you like!

9 He is very strong indeed!

10 He isn't strong, but I am (strong).

E Translate:

- 1 Please shut the window!
- 2 Please let me know if the time suits you.
- 3 Please sit down!
- 4 Please tell me about it!

## Vocabulary

igjen	again
overraskelsen	the surprise
spent	curious
å tro (-dde, -dd)	to think, believe
kjedelig	boring
i begynnelsen	at the beginning
havnen	the port
å ta feil	to be wrong
å innse (-så, -sett)	to realise
reisen	the voyage
gir det beste utbyttet	is the most worthwhile
skipstekket	the deck of the ship
å slappe (-et, -et) av	to relax
praktfull	magnificent

kystlandskapet  
fossen  
å glemme (-mte, -mt)  
å heve (-et, -et) seg  
klippen  
på begge sider  
å dekke (-et, -et)  
fjellvegen  
sløret  
sølvbåndet  
sansen for poesi  
å innrømme (-et, -et)  
å dukke (-et, -et) opp  
midt blandt  
å klynde (-et, -et) seg til  
lappen, flekken  
vegetasjonen  
klyningen  
trehuset  
lys  
fiskerbåten  
midnattssolen  
vanlig  
sannheten  
sant å si  
følelsen  
Nordkapp  
bortenfor  
å være fornøyd med  
å organisere (-te, -t)  
å delta (-tok, -tatt)  
inne i landet  
reinsdyret  
samens  
toppen  
et par  
enda en gang  
vennligheten  
noensinne  
å nøle (-te, -t)

the coastal scenery  
the waterfall  
to forget  
to tower  
the rock  
on either side  
to cover  
the mountain wall  
the veil  
the silvery ribbon  
the sense of poetry  
to admit  
to appear  
amid  
to cling to  
the patch  
the vegetation  
the cluster  
the wooden house  
bright  
the fishing boat  
the midnight sun  
ordinary  
the truth  
to tell the truth  
the feeling  
North Cape  
beyond  
to be happy with  
to organise  
to take part  
inland  
the reindeer  
the Lapp  
the summit  
a couple of  
once again  
the kindness  
ever  
to hesitate

## CONVERSATION

### Nytt møte i Oslo

Meeting again in Oslo

- Janice McLeod God dag, herr Holm. Så hyggelig å se Dem igjen!  
*Good morning, Mr Holm. How nice to see you again!*
- Herr Holm God dag. For en hyggelig overraskelse! Nå er jeg spent på å høre om Deres reise med Hurtigruten!  
*Good morning! What a nice surprise! Now I am curious to hear about your journey with the Coastal Express!*
- Janice McLeod Vi har alltid trodd at en sjøreise ville være kjedelig, og i begynnelsen lurtet vi på hva vi ville kunne se og gjøre mellom havnene.  
*We had always thought a cruise would be boring, and at the beginning we wondered what there would be to see or do between the ports.*
- Anthony McLeod Men vi tok feil! Vi skjønte snart at i Norge er det selve reisen mer enn stoppestedene som gir det beste utbyttet. But we were wrong! We soon realised that in Norway it's the voyage, more than the stops, that is the most worthwhile.
- Janice McLeod Mens vi satt der på skipsdekket, lærte vi å slappe av og ta inn i oss det praktfulle kystlandskapet.  
*Sitting on the deck of the ship, we learned to relax and take in the magnificent coastal scenery.*

Herr Holm

Så dere fossen Syv Søstre i Geiranger?  
Did you see the Seven Sisters' waterfall at  
Geiranger?

Janice McLeod

Å ja, jeg skal aldri glemme  
Geirangerfjorden med klippene og  
fjellene som hever seg på begge sider, og  
de Syv Søstre som dekker fjellveggen lik  
et slør av sølvbånd!  
*Oh yes, I shall never forget the Geiranger  
fjord with its towering rocks and mountains  
on either side, and the Seven Sisters covering  
the mountain wall like a veil of silvery  
ribbons!*

Anthony McLeod

Ja, De forstår, min kone har alltid hatt  
sans for poesi! Men jeg må innrømme at  
jeg selv ble ganske fascinert av bonde-  
gårdene som plutselig dukket opp midt  
blant klippene, der de klynget seg til  
lapper av vegetasjon ...  
*You see, my wife has always had a sense  
of poetry! But I must admit that I was quite  
fascinated myself by the farmhouses that  
suddenly appeared amid the rocks clinging  
to patches of vegetation ...*

Janice McLeod

... Og de små klyngene av trehus i lyse  
farger med en fiskebåt foran.  
... and the small clusters of brightly coloured  
wooden houses with a fishing boat in front.

Herr Holm

Og hva med midnattssolen?  
*And what about the midnight sun?*

Anthony McLeod

Som en amerikansk venn sa, den lignet  
svært mye på den vanlige solen! Sant å si  
var min sterkeste følelse da jeg stod på  
Nordkapp, at jeg befant meg på toppen  
av Europa og visste at det ikke var noe  
bortenfor.

*As an American friend said, it looked very  
much like the ordinary sun! To tell the truth,*

*my strongest feeling, standing on North Cape,  
was that of being on the top of Europe know-  
ing that there was nothing beyond.*

Herr Holm

Så dere er også fornøyd med reisen  
begge to?  
*So you're both happy with your trip?*

Janice McLeod

Ja, det hele var godt arrangert, og vi del-  
tok selvsagt i noen av utfluktene inne i  
landet. Vi drog med reinsdyr for å  
besøke samene og på tur til toppen av  
Tromsøya, bare for å nevne et par av de  
tingene vi likte best.  
*Yes, it was all very well organised and, of  
course, we took part in some of the inland  
tours. We went by reindeer to see the Lapps  
and on a trip to the summit of Tromsøya, just  
to mention a couple of the things that we  
enjoyed the most.*

Herr Holm

Unnskyld meg, jeg er lei for å måtte  
forlate dere, men jeg er allerede sent ute.  
Adjø, og ha en god hjemreise!  
*Excuse me, I'm sorry to leave you, but I'm  
already late. Goodbye, and have a pleasant  
trip home!*

Janice McLeod

Adjø, herr Holm. Takk enda en gang for  
Deres venn lighet. Og hvis De noen  
gang kommer til London, så nøl ikke  
med å besøke oss!  
*Goodbye, Mr Holm. Thank you once again  
for your kindness. And if you ever come to  
London, don't hesitate to come and see us!*

## *Key to exercises*

### CHAPTER 1

**Exercise 1A:** 1 en koffert 2 en lommebok 3 et pass 4 en gate 5 et bilde 6 en stasjon 7 en rute 8 et tog 9 en buss 10 et fly **B:** 1 kofferten 2 lommeboken 3 passet 4 gaten 5 bildet 6 stasjonen 7 ruten 8 toget 9 bussen 10 flyet

**Exercise 2:** 1 stoler 2 senger 3 bord 4 hus 5 vinduer 6 skoler 7 tepper 8 bøker 9 hender 10 mødre 11 trær 12 menn 13 byer 14 trapper 15 fjell

**Exercise 3:** 1 en stol – stolen – stoler – stolene 2 en seng – sengen – senger – sengene 3 et bord – bordet – bord – bordene 4 et hus – huset – hus – husene 5 et vindu – vinduet – vinduer – vinduene 6 et teppe – teppet – tepper – peppene 7 en skole – skolen – skoler – skolene 8 en hånd – hånden – hender – hendene 9 en mor – moren – mødre – mødrene 10 et tre – treet – trær – trærne 11 en vei – veien – veier – veiene 12 en bil – bilen – biler – bilene 13 en lampe – lampen – lamper – lampene 14 et gulv – gulvet – gulv – gulvene 15 et tak – taket – tak – takene

**Exercise 4:** 1 Hva heter du (De)? Jeg heter Anthony McLeod. 2 Er du (De) amerikansk? 4 Nei, jeg er engelsk. 5 Har du (De) venner i Norge? 6 Ja, det har jeg. 7 Hvor er din (Deres) kone? 8 Hun er i butikken. 9 Har du (dere) barn? 10 Ja, vi har to barn. 11 Er de også i Norge? 12 Ja, det er de. 13 Hvor gamle er de? 14 De er tolv og fjorten år gamle.

### CHAPTER 2

**Exercise 5:** 1mannens avis 2 søsterens venn 3 barnets foreldre 4 kundenes vesker 5 byens navn 6 togets fart 7 blomsternes farger 8 husets hjørne

**Exercise 6:** 1 en stort lastebil, et stor pakhus, store varemagasiner 2 Blusen er gul, slipset er rødt, skoene er sorte.

3 Den er lys, det er langt, de er spisse. 4 Han har lyst hår, blå øyne, en liten hake, et lite arr i pannen og små fregner på nesen. 5 et merkelig svar, et hyggelig møte, et lett spørsmål 6 Livet er kort, dagen er kort, timene er korte. 7 et nytte møte, et fritt valg, et plutselig stopp

**Exercise 7:** 1 den brune genser 2 det lange undertøyet 3 de varme klærne 4 den nye lastebilen 5 det store varemagasinet 6 det farlige veikrysset 7 den lille bondegården 8 det lille føllet

**Exercise 8:** 1 I Norge er det nødvendig å bruke varme klær om vinteren. 2 Alle må lære å lese og (å) skrive. 3 Vi ønsker å reise til Italia i sommer. 4 Du (Dere) arbeider meget hardt. 5 De ser på fjernsyn. 6 Hun kjøper (seg) en ny kjole. 7 Han bor i Oslo. Hver morgen reiser han til kontoret med buss. 8 Om aftenen foretrekker han å bli hjemme.

**Exercise 9A:** 1 Er det kaldt i Norge om vinteren? 2 Trenger vi varmt undertøy og en tykk genser? 3 Ønsker du (De, dere) å bli i Oslo? 4 Liker du (De, dere) å gå på ski? 5 Kommer Deres (dine) barn sammen med Dem (Dere, deg)? 6 Har de (fått) venner her? 7 Hører du (De, dere) meg ikke? **B:** 1 Ja, det er kaldt i Norge om vinteren. 2 Ja, dere trenger varmt undertøy og en tykk genser. 3 Ja, jeg (vi) ønsker å bli i Oslo. 4 Ja, jeg (vi) liker å gå på ski. 5 Ja, våre (mine) barn kommer sammen med oss (meg). 6 Nei, de har ikke fått venner her. 7 Nei, jeg (vi) hører deg ikke.

### CHAPTER 3

**Exercise 10A:** 1 Arbeid hardere! 2 Les boken! 3 Lær leksjen (leksjonen)! 4 Skriv øvelsen! 5 Spis aftensmaten (din aftensmad)! 6 Kom tilbake! 7 Stopp toget! 8 Ta bussen! 9 Stå stille! 10 Se på himmelen! **B:** 6 Kom ikke tilbake! 7 Stopp ikke toget! 8 Ta ikke bussen! 9 Stå ikke stille! 10 Se ikke på himmelen! (or: Ikke kom ..., Ikke stopp ... etc.)

**Exercise 11:** 1 Hvor bor De (du)? 2 Når reiser dere? Hvordan har De (du) det? 4 Hvem er det? 5 Hvem ser hun etter? 6 Hvilket eple foretrekker du? 7 Hva er det? 8 Hvor mange språk snakker De (du)? 9 Hvilke språk snakker De (du)? 10 Hvor mye kommer det på?

**Exercise 12:** 1 Han går aldri på kino. 2 De har ingen (ikke noen) gjester. 3 Vi har ikke noe (intet) landsted. 4 Jeg ønsker ingenting (ikke noe). 5 Du (Dere) har ikke mer brød. 6 Det er ikke kaldt lenger.

**Exercise 13:** 1 den hyggelige aftenen 2 denne varme sommeren 3 de uforglemelige dagene 4 det farlige veikrysset 5 disse blå fjellene 6 dette moderne skipet 7 - Kjøp ikke (Ikke kjøp) den boken! - Hvilken bok mener De (du)? - Jeg mener den (der). Denne (her) er mye (meget) bedre. 8 Jeg vil ha to brød, dette (her) og det der. Og tre kaker, to av disse (her) og en av de der.

**Exercise 14:** (a) to + ni = elleve (to og ni er elleve)  
(b) fem + syv (sju) = tolv (c) femten - ni = seks (femten minus ni er seks) (d) toogtyve (tjueto) + fireogførte (førtifire) = seksogseksti (sekstiseks) (e) treogtyve (tjuetre) - ti = tretten (f) seksogfemti (femtiseks) - toogtredve (trettito) = fireogtyve (tjuefire) (g) treogtredve (trettitre) x (ganger) tre = niognitti (nittini) (h) hundre : (dividert med) femogtyve (tjuefem) = fire (i) femten x fem = femogsytti (syttifem) (j) åtteogseksti : fire = sytten (k) seks x åtte = åtteogførte (førtiåtte) (l) åtteognitti (nittiatte) : fjorten = syv (sju).

#### CHAPTER 4

**Exercise 15:** 1 Hvor er min blå skjorte, mitt røde slips, mine brune sokker? 2 Dette er din lommebok, ditt pass og dine billetter. 3 Vårt fly (Flyet vårt) er forsinket. 4 De må levere sine kofferter (koffertene sine). 5 Deres bagasje (Bagasjen deres) er i flyet. 6 Hans forretningsforbindelser venter (på) ham. 7 Hun besøker sin kjæreste (kjæresten sin). 8 Flyet og dets mannskap. 9 Vask hendene! 10 Han har (en) hatt på hodet.

**Exercise 16:** 1 Det setet (der) er hennes, dette (her) er ditt. 2 Disse avisene (her) er våre, de (der) er deres. 3 Ingenting (Ikke noe) i dette huset er hans, alt er mitt. 4 Vi har våre feil, og dere har deres.

**Exercise 17:** 1 enkle klær 2 våkne øyne 3 magre lammekoteletter 4 et norsk flagg, norske flagg 5 et fremmed land, fremmede land 6 et felles anliggende, felles anliggender 7 et moderne hus, moderne hus

**Exercise 18:** 1 Kari er yngre enn Marit. Men Berit er den yngste pikken i klassen. 2 Norge er større enn Danmark. Men Sverige er det største av de tre skandinaviske landene. 3 Skagastølstind er høyere enn Snøhetta. Men Galdhøpiggen er den høyeste fjelltoppen i Norge. 4 Trondheimsfjorden er lengre enn Oslofjorden. Men Sognefjorden er den lengste av dem alle. 5 Denne boken er mer underholdende enn den. Men den der er den mest underholdende bok jeg har i mitt bibliotek.

**Exercise 19:** 1 Gi henne et armbånd! 2 Clem ikke å takke ham for det. 3 Vær så snill å skrive (og skriv) til meg om det. 4 Hennes mor venter på henne på stasjonen. 5 Vær så snill å sende (og send) oss varene så snart det passer for Dem (deg). 6 Jeg besøker dem én gang i ukken.

**Exercise 20:** (a) kvart (et kvarter) over to, halv tre, kvart på tre, tre (b) fem over tre, ti på halv fire, ti over halv fire, fem på fire (c) ett minutt over fire, tolv over fire, fire på halv fem, syv (sju) over halv fem.

#### CHAPTER 15

**Exercise 21:** 1 Noen gutter kastet steiner på hverandre. 2 Vi beskyttet våre venner. 3 Han skadet hodet (sitt). 4 De trodde det ikke. 5 Hun hentet treningsdressen (sin). 6 Hver morgen jogget hun i parken. 7 Hva spiste du til frokost? 8 Jeg kokte noen egg og stekte noen poteter. 9 Vi hørte en lyd, men ingenting (ikke noe) hendte. 10 Vinden blåste kraftig og det snødde. 11 Vi lukket dørene. 12 Barna lekte på gulvet. De brydde seg ikke om stormen.

**Exercise 22:** 1 Hun skrev et brev til formannen. 2 De fant (den) mannen de så etter. 3 Han gikk redover gaten. 4 Denne herren hjalp meg. 5 Han tok mine kofferter (koffertene mine) og bar dem til stasjonen. 6 Bilen kom mot ham i meget stor fart. 7 Gutten ble redd og løp av sted. 8 Foreldrene (Hans foreldre) grep ham og holdt ham tilbake. 9 De gav ham en iskrem for å roe ham ned. 10 Han satte seg (ned) og sa ingenting.

**Exericse 23A:** 1 langsom – langsomt 2 rask – raskt (fort – fort) 3 klart – klart (tydelig – tydelig) 4 vennlig – vennlig 5 riktig – riktig 6 dårlig – dårlig 7 tung – tungt (kraftig – kraftig) 8 forferdelig – forferdelig **B:** 1 vanligvis, naturligvis, oppover, nedover, nedenfor, ovenfor 2 meget, for mye (for meget), nå, ennå, likevel, sjeldent, knapt (neppe), nettopp (bare), forskjellig, særlig, kanskje **C:** 1 Vi ønsket sterkt å dra på fjelltur. 2 Det begynte plutselig å regne. Vi hadde ikke noen regnfrakk, så vi ble snart gjennomvåte. 3 Men litt etter litt kom vi nærmere fjellene. 4 Til slutt kom vi frem til vårt bestemmelsessted. 5 Vi trengete virkelig noen tørre klær!

**Exercise 24:** (a) (den) første, annen (andre), tredje, fjerde, femte, sjette, syvende (sjuende), åttende, niende, tiende  
(b) eleverte, tolvte, trettende, tyvende (tjuende), enogtyvende (tjueførste), toogtredevte (trettiandre), fernogførtende (førtifemte), treogfemtede (femtitredje), seksogsekstiende (seksstisjette), åtteogsyttiende (syttiåttende), syvogåttende (åttisjuende), niognittiende (nittiniende) (c) en halv, tre fjerdele, fem åttendedeler, sju (sju) tolvtedeler, åtte femtendedeler

#### CHAPTER 6

**Exercise 25:** 1 Har du snakket med din venn? 2 Nei, jeg har ikke sett ham på lang tid, men jeg har skrevet et brev til ham. 3 Dine (Deres) kolleger har ventet på deg (Dem). 4 Jeg har (er) kommet før sent til toget. 5 Hun har hatt en traveldag. 6 Babyen har skrekket hele natten. 7 Hun har følt seg (Hun har vært) deprimert. 8 De har gått en tur. 9 Vi har tilbrakt (hatt) en god tid sammen. 10 Vi har bodd i Oslo hele livet. 11 Har du (De) sett hans siste film? 12 Nei, jeg har ikke vært på kino på mange år.

**Exercise 26:** 1 Hvor skal vi gå i aften? 2 Jeg vil gå på kino. 3 Vi bør bestille billetter på forhånd. 4 Ja, jeg vet det. Når må vi hente billettene? 5 Når vil du at jeg skal komme? 6 Kan du komme litt tidligere? 7 Jeg skal (vil) være der (klokken) seks. 8 Vi må ikke være for sene.

**Exercise 27:** 1 I natt ble hun verre. 2 Men om morgenen følte hun seg (var hun) meget bedre. 3 Senere på dagen var hun helt frisk igjen. 4 Neste dag stod hun tidligst opp og arbeidet

hardest av oss alle. 5 Vil du forstå bedre hva folk sier og bli lettere forstått? 6 Da må du lytte mer oppmerksomt og snakke mer tydelig (tydeligere).

**Exercise 28:** 1 Per gikk ned på gaten. 2 Nede på gaten traff han en venn. 3 De kjørte bort i en bil. 4 De ble borte i tre timer. 5 Hjemme ventet foreldrene på ham. 6 De bad meg hjem. 7 Du skulle ikke gådituten å si fra til oss. 8 Her i huset må alle følge husordenen.

**Exercise 29:** 1 Hvilken årstid foretrekker du? 2 Jeg liker alle årstider. 3 Om vinteren går vi på ski og skøyter, og noen ganger aker vi. 4 I vår tilbrakte vi påskeferien i en fjellhytte i Hallingdal. 5 Vi bodde der fra Skjærtorsdag til Annen påskedag. 6 (På) den syttende mai feiret vi den norske nasjonaldagen. 7 I sommer drog vi på fisketur til (i) et fiskevann i Gudbrandsdalen. 8 Sist høst gikk vi (tur) i fjellene. 9 Til sommeren skal vi dra på seiltur i Oslofjorden. 10 Hvilken dato er det i dag? 11 Det er den 6. januar, 28. februar, 11. mars, 21. april, 4. juli, 2. september, 25. oktober, 3. november, 27. desember. 12 Det er Nyttårsdag, Langfredag, Kristi Himmelfartsdag, Første juledag, Annen pinsedag.

#### CHAPTER 7

**Exercise 30:** 1 Min venn hadde vært alvorlig syk. 2 Han hadde forlatt landet. 3 Nå var han blitt bedre, og han var kommet hjem. 4 Vi hadde bedt ham til middag. 5 Jeg hadde ikke sett ham siden i fjor jul. 6 Han hadde ikke forandret seg. 7 Vi snakket som om ingenting hadde hendt.

**Exercise 31:** 1 Det er en statue foran Slottet. 2 Det er en postkasse på hjørnet. 3 Det er et supermarked ved siden av stasjonen. 4 Det er mange blomster på torget. 5 Jeg hadde vært i Norge siden jul. 6 Jeg hadde vært der fra januar til april. 7 Jeg hadde vendt (reist) tilbake til London før påske. 8 Kan du lese uten (dine) briller? 9 Bare med stor vanskelighet. 10 Jeg ville gjerne ha noe for min reisesyke. 11 Ikke spis mellom måltidene! 12 Det nye teateret ligger bak universitetet.

**Exercise 32:** 1 Snakker noen her engelsk? 2 Har De noen gode appelsiner? 3 De er alle gode, men noen av dem er bedre enn de andre. 4 Noe er bedre enn ingenting. 5 Du kan

ikke ha alt. 6 Han hadde telt hver time, hvert minutt. 7 Hun spurte hver av dem. 8 Man sier at han har vært meget rik.

**Exercise 33:** (a) (ett) hundre og femti + (ett) hundre = to hundre og femti (b) to hundre og seksti + (ett) hundre og førti = fire hundre (c) tre hundre og ti + fem hundre og femogsytti (syttifem) = åtte hundre og femogåtti (åttifem) (d) syv hundre og åtteogførti (sju hundre og førtiåtte) x tolv = åtte tusen ni hundre og seksogsytti (syttiseks) (e) fire hundre og femti x (ett) hundre og femogtyve (tjuefem) = seksogfemti (femtiseks) tusen to hundre og femti (f) tre tusen fem hundre og sytti x seks tusen åtte hundre og tredve (tretti) = fireogtyve (tjuefire) millioner tre hundre og treogåtti (åttitre) tusen ett hundre

**Exercise 34:** 1 Det er pent vær (Det er varmt). 2 Det er dårlig vær. 3 Det regner. 4 Det snør (snør). 5 Det blåser. 6 Det er tåket. 7 Det er kaldt. 8 Det tiner (tør).

#### CHAPTER 8

**Exercise 35:** 1 Først skal (vil) jeg avslutte mitt arbeid. 2 Etterpå skal vi spise middag. 3 Middagen er (vil være) ferdig om en halv time. 4 Jeg skal reise om (noen) få minutter. 5 Jeg skal gjøre noen innkjøp. 6 I morgen skal vi reise med fly til Stavanger. 7 Derfra skal vi reise med hydrofoil til Bergen. Det blir (vil bli) morsomt! 9 Vi er ikke (vil ikke være) tilbake før (på) søndag.

**Exercise 36A:** Jeg setter meg, du setter deg, han (hun) setter seg, vi setter oss, dere setter dere, de setter seg. **B:** 1 Når legger du deg? (Når legger dere dere?) 2 Vanligvis legger vi oss (klokken) halv tolv. 3 De små barna legger seg (klokken) halv åtte. 4 Om morgenen vil(le) vi alle gjerne hvile litt lenger. 5 Men vi må komme oss på arbeidet tidsnok. 6 Vi vasker oss og kler på oss i en fart. 7 Bare på søndager kan vi hygge oss ved frokostbordet. 8 Vi trenger ikke å slanke oss for å kvitte oss med overflødige kilo.

**Exercise 37:** 1 I morges hørte jeg en lyd som vekket meg. 2 Fra mitt vindu så jeg en gutt som jeg kjente meget godt. 3 Det var avisgutten som brakte morgenavisen. 4 Jeg tok avisen som lå innenfor entrédøren. 5 Avisen som jeg leste

brakte en reportasje om et bankrøveri. 6 Da kom min kone, som vanligvis stod opp først, for å spise frokost sammen med meg. 7 Hun satte seg ved frokostbordet, og jeg fortalte henne hva jeg hadde lest i avisen. 8 Banken hvis penger var stjållet, lå like ved siden av stasjonen.

**Exercise 38:** 1 Langrenn er like (likså) spennende som slalåm og utfør(renn). 2 Fjellturer er like (likså) populære som sjøreiser langs kysten. 3 Dette rommet (værelset) er ikke så komfortabelt som det andre. 4 Du kan bli så lenge du vil. 5 Kredittkort blir ikke så lett godtatt i Norge som i USA og Canada. 6 En eldre dame er ikke så gammel som en gammel dame, men hun er eldre enn en middelaldrende dame. 7 Han hoppet over gjerdet med den største letthet. 8 Ingen hadde den minste (ringeste) mistanke.

**Exercise 39:** Jeg vil(le) (gjerne) ha et værelse (rom) til meg og min kone, noe pent og garske sentralt, men ikke for dyrt. 2 Jeg trenger verken (en) nattklubb eller (en) badstue, men et svømmebasseng ville være fint. 3 Dette rommet har utsikt mot parken, mens det andre vender (ut) mot gaten. 4 Jeg tar dette, fordi jeg liker fred og ro. 5 Du (De) kan enten ta et tog eller fly.

#### CHAPTER 9

**Exercise 40:** 1 Når jeg er i Oslo, besøker jeg alltid Munch-Museet. 2 Da jeg var i Oslo i fjor, besøkte jeg Munch-Museet. 3 Når jeg kommer til Oslo neste år, skal (vil) jeg besøke Munch-Museet. 4 Jeg besøkte Munch-Museet mens jeg var i Oslo. 5 Idet jeg kom inn i museet, møtte jeg noen venner. 6 Etterat vi hadde sett bildene, spiste vi lunsj i restauranten. 7 Før vi forlot restauranten, sa vi adjø til våre venner. 8 Fordi vi ville se Vigelandsparken, tok vi en drosje. 9 Siden vi ikke hadde sett den før, ville vi nødig gå glipp av denne muligheten. 10 Hvis vi ikke så den denne gangen, er jeg redd vi ville angre det. 11 Selv om vi var litt trette, synes jeg det var umaken verd. 12 For at hjemreisen skulle bli så lett som mulig, hadde vi allerede pakket koffertene.

**Exercise 41:** 1 Når vi sender varer til utlandet, er pakking en viktig faktor. 2 Etterat varene er pakket i fabrikken, blir de aldri håndtert igjen før de når bestemmelsesstedet.

3 Hvis vi finner at noe er galt med varene, må vi underrette fabrikantene med én gang. 4 Skjønt (Enda) bilen ikke var et fullstendig vrak, var skaden betydelig. 5 Det er ingen vits i å produsere varer med mindre de kan selges (bli solgt) til en rimelig pris innen en rimelig tid. 6 'Jeg skal svare på (besvare) dine spørsmål hvis jeg kan,' sa hun. 7 Å spørre (Å stille spørsmål) er mye (atskillig) lettere enn å svare, vet du. 8 Hvis et uhell hender, må du rapportere skaden til assuranseselskapet.

**Exercise 42A:** 1 Hvis bussen var forsiktig, ville jeg ta en drosje. 2 Hvis jeg ikke hadde penger, ville jeg bruke mitt kredittkort. 3 Hvis betingelsene ikke var akseptable, ville herr Hansen (han) be om et nytt tilbud. 4 Hvis han hadde mye tid, ville han lære norsk. 5 Hvis jeg ble bestjålet, ville jeg tilkalle politiet. **B:** Jeg vil(le) (gjerne) ha en badedrakt, en T-skjorte og et par shorts.

**Exercise 43:** 1 Jeg synes (at) prisen er for høy. 2 Jeg er redd for at jeg ikke kan betale så mye. 3 Jeg håper De vil senke prisen. 4 Jeg undrer meg på om disse skoene passer (meg). 5 Kan jeg prøve dem på og se om de passer?

**Exercise 44A:** 1 På kysten, for eksempel i Bodø og i Bergen, er det ikke så kaldt om vinteren og ikke så varmt om sommeren som i Oslo og på Kongsberg. 2 I andre deler av landet, for eksempel i Finnmark, i Valdres og i Østerdalen, er vinteren meget lang. 3 Du vil finne de høyeste maksimumstemperaturene i innlandet, for eksempel i Telemark og i Hallingdal. Men noen ganger kan det være likså varmt i Nord-Norge som i Sør-Norge – på Sørlandet og på Østlandet. **B:** 1 Sverige – svensk – en svenske 2 England – engelsk – en engelskmann 3 Canada – kanadisk – en kanadier 4 Amerika – amerikansk – en amerikaner 5 Italia – italiensk – en italiener 6 Europa – europeisk – en europeer 7 Japan – japansk – en japaner. **C:** 1 i Paris, på Java, på New-Zealand, i Australia, på Ålandsøyene, i Tromsø, i Haugesund, på Kongsvinger, i Hordaland, på Vestlandet

## CHAPTER 10

**Exercise 45A:** 1 Fredsprisen blir overrakt av Nobelkomiteens formann. 2 New York Marathon er blitt vunnet av Grete Waitz ni ganger. 3 Restbeløpet ble betalt av kunden innen fristens utløp. 4 Denne stolen vil ikke lenger bli produsert av oss. **B:** 1 Jeg håper du vil lykkes. 2 De syntes synd på ham. 3 Det er det beste som finnes. 4 Vi møtes igjen ved neste korsvei.

**Exercise 46A:** 1 rennende vann 2 en fly(g)ende fugl 3 fallende priser 4 et voksende marked 5 et skuffende svar **B:** 1 To menn kom krypende mot ham. 2 Den lille gutten gikk gråtende bort. 3 Vi ble sittende. 4 Vi hørte henne sygne. 5 Da vi hadde ventet (i) en halv time, så vi dem forlate huset. 6 Hvis du fortsetter å insistere, skal jeg gjøre det. 7 Ved å studere litt hver dag vil du lære norsk på tre måneder. 8 Liker du å svømme og (å) seile?

**Exercise 47:** 1 En fin jakthund med et pent hundehalsbånd. 2 Fabrikkarbeiderne krevde en betydelig lønnsforhøyelse og bedre arbeidsbetingelser. 2 Skolebarna gleder seg til syttendemaitoget. 4 Jeg har sendt fødselsdagsgaver og nyttårshilsener til alle mine venner og slektninger. 5 I ganske lang tid har Norge vært en av de ledende sjøfartsnasjoner med en betydelig handelsflåte. 6 Norge har snødekte fjelltopper og mange fiskevann.

**Exercise 48A:** 1 Vi arbeider på et kontor i byen. 2 De arbeider på en gård på landet. 3 Han arbeider på et lager, hun arbeider i en butikk. 4 Barna går på skolen. 5 På skolen lerer de å lese, skrive og regne. 6 I går gikk vi i selskap. Gjestene var i stuen i første etasje. 7 Vertinnen var på kjøkkenet og barna på soveværelset. 8 Liker du å gå på konsern? 9 Går dere ofte i kirken? **B:** 1 Hva snakket de om? 2 Jeg vet ikke noe om det. 3 Han spurte henne om hun røkte. 4 Hun bad ham om en sigarett. 5 Han var ikke sikker på om han hadde noen sigareetter.

## CHAPTER 11

**Exercise 49A:** 1 Vi drog fra England for en uke siden. 2 Vi hadde studert norsk i tre måneder. 3 Vi kommer til å bli i Norge i to uker. 4 Toget går om to timer. 5 Vi reiser først

om en halv time. 6 Jeg har ikke røkt på to år. B: 1 He was packing his suitcase. 2 He was about to (going to) leave the country. 3 They were having dinner. 4 We stood waiting for the bus. C: 1 Hun gikk til byen for å handle. 2 Hun ønsket å kjøpe noe godt for å overraske sin familie. 3 Men hun hadde ikke noen penger å kjøpe for.

**Exercise 50:** 1 Bor frøken Holm her? 2 Nei, hun gjør ikke det. 3 Er hun blitt syk? 4 Ja, jeg er redd for det. 5 Er hun på sykehuset? 6 Ja, hun er det (Ja, det er hun). 7 Jeg håpet at hun ville være bra nå. 8 Det gjorde vi også. Men jeg tror hun er litt bedre.

**Exercise 51:** 1 Det ligger en kirke på den andre siden av torget. 2 Det ligger en kniv på kjøkkenbenken. 3 Tønsberg ligger sør for Oslo. 4 Det står en vase på bordet. 5 Det står en sykkel i trappen. 6 Hva står det i avisens i dag? 7 Det sitter en dame og venter i entréen. 8 Han sitter og spiser frokost. 9 Satt du dårlig? 10 Går det deg godt? 11 Hvordan gikk det? 12 Dagene gikk så fort (raskt).

#### CHAPTER 12

**Exercise 52:** 1 Many Norwegians are proud of their country and long for praise from other nations. 2 They want to be respected for more than having a beautiful country and being descendants of the old Vikings. 3 They are very interested in sport and work hard to keep up with other nations. 4 They rejoice without inhibition at every victory in international competitions and are immensely disappointed at every defeat. 5 They complain about the referee or put the blame on injured players when their team loses an international football match. 6 Some people think that the Norwegians must suffer from an enormous inferiority complex. 7 Others feel like laughing at the whole thing and consider that the Norwegians resemble other people in that respect.

**Exercise 53A:** 1 et kokt egg 2 en ribbet kylling 3 en flådd bjørn 4 et frigjort land 5 et strøket lommeterkle 6 en frosset (frossen) finger B: 1 det kokte egget – kokte egg – de kokte eggene 2 den ribbede kyllingen – ribbede kyllinger – de ribbede kyllingene 6 den frosne fingeren – frosne fingrer – de frosne fingrene

**Exercise 54A:** 1 Dere har hatt en hyggelig ferie, har dere ikke det? 2 Du er fornøyd med oppholdet i Norge, er du ikke det? 3 Dere skal ikke reise før i morgen, skal dere vel? 4 Dere har ikke glemt noe, har dere vel? 5 Dere kommer igjen neste år, gjør dere ikke det? B: 1 Vi kommer i slutten av juli, tror jeg. 2 Dere (Du) burde komme i september, forstår dere (du). 3 Det er den beste tiden for å fiske, vet dere (du). C: 1 Du liker vel å fiske? 2 Ja, det roer meg liksom ned. 3 Fikk du noe fisk i år, forresten? 4 Nei, men det var vel litt tidlig på året. 5 Du vil nok ha mer hell med deg neste år. D: 1 Ja, det var slutten på ferien. (Ja, så var ferien slutt, da.) 2 Nei, så trist (da)! 3 Jaja, det er ikke noe å gjøre med det. 4 Hils din søster (søsteren din) fra meg da! 5 Ja, det skal jeg gjøre. 6 Mornal! (Morn da!) 7 God fornøyelse! 8 Gjør som du vil, du. 9 Han er sterkt, han! 10 Han er ikke sterkt, jeg er sterkt, jeg. E: 1 Vær så snill og lukk vinduet! (Vær så snill å lukke vinduet!) 2 Vær så snill og (å) si meg om tiden passer deg. 3 Vær så god og sitt ned (å sitte ned)! 4 Vær så snill og fortell (å fortelle) meg om det!

# Appendix

## Norwegian spelling

Even if the main objective of your study is to learn to speak and understand Norwegian, some basic information about its spelling rules may be helpful.

On page 8 of this course we mentioned the general spelling rule that a long vowel is usually followed by a single consonant and a short vowel by a double consonant:

Long	Short
v�t wet	vott mitten
bok book	bukk bow
gul yellow	gull gold
� lese to read	� lesse to load
� vise to show	visse ( <i>plural of viss</i> ) certain
� nyt� to enjoy	nytten the benefit

This is a rule with many exceptions. A lot of common words with a short vowel are written with only one consonant, such as at 'that', *hvis* 'if', *nok* 'enough', *vel* 'well' and the present tense forms of the modal auxiliaries: *skal*, *kan*, *b r*, *vil*.

Note also that double **m** never appears at the end of words:

dum foolish	dumme ( <i>plural of dum</i> )
en dom a judgement	dommen the judgement
Kom! Come!	� komme to come

Before inflectional endings beginning with a consonant, a double consonant is changed into a single one:

� spille to play	spilte played
� falle to fall	falt fell
tykk thick, fat	tykt ( <i>neuter of tykk</i> )
sann true	sant ( <i>neuter of sann</i> )

This reduction of the double consonant also occurs before the endings -ne, -ning, -sel, -ling and -sk:

lett light	� letne to lighten
� bygge to build	en bygning a building
� brenne to burn	brensel fuel
� tt family	� tting descendant
troll troll	trolsk magic, bewitching

Important exceptions are:

fullt ( <i>neuter of full</i> ) full
spisst ( <i>neuter of spiss</i> ) pointed
visste – visst knew – known

A long vowel is sometimes changed into a short one, as in:

� lete to search	lette searched
� se to see	sett seen
bl� blue	bl�tt ( <i>neuter of bl�</i> )

Note also that adjectives endings in -el, -en, -er drop their -e before an inflectional ending beginning with -e:

edel noble	edle ( <i>plural</i> )
doven lazy	dovne ( <i>plural</i> )
munter merry muntrere merrier muntest merriest	

The -e in -el and -er is also dropped in the plural of nouns:

engelen the angel	engler angels	englene the angels
fingeren the finger	vingre(r) fingers	fingrene the fingers

## *Mini-dictionary*

### English–Norwegian

Although the following is not an exhaustive list of words found in the book, it will be helpful for quick reference. Numbers against some entries indicate chapters, sections and pages where irregular verbs and other important points are explained. See also the index on page 230.

able, to be able å kunnen, sec. 29	American amerikaner (c), amerikansk
about om	amid midt iblant
above over	and og
abroad i utlandet	angel engel (c)
accept (vb) motta, godta	answer (vb) svare
accident uhell (n), ulykke (c)	answer svar (n)
admit innrømme	any noen sec. 38
advance: in advance på forhånd	appear dukke opp, vise seg
advice råd (n)	apple eple (n)
aeroplane fly (n)	arm arm (c)
afraid (of) redd (for)	arrange ordne, arrangere
after etter	arrive (at) komme frem (til), (an) komme (til)
afternoon ettermiddag (c)	as idet, ettersom sec. 46
afterwards etterpå	as ... as likså ... som sec. 44
again igjen	as if som om sec. 46
against mot	ashamed skamfull
age alder, tid (c)	ask (for) spørre (etter) (irreg.) secs 21, 28
ago for ... siden	asleep i søvn
air luft (c)	at på, ved
airport flyplass (c)	at last til slutt
all all, alt, hel	at least minst
along langs	attentively oppmerksomt
already allerede	aunt tante
also også	autumn høst (c)
although enda, skjønt	avoid unngå (irreg.) page 156
always alltid	away av sted
America Amerika	

back tilbake	blow (vb) blåse
backwards bakover	blue blå
bad, badly dårlig	boat båt (c)
bag veske, pose (c)	boil koke
bank bank (c)	book (vb) bestille
bank robbery bankran (n)	book bok (c)
bar bar (c)	border grense (c)
barred sperret	boring kjedelig
bathroom bad (n)	boss sjef (c)
be (vb) være (irreg.) see Index	both begge
bear bjørn (c)	both ... and både ... og
beard skjegg (n)	bottle flaske (c)
because fordi	bow bukk (n)
become bli (irreg.) secs 22, 28	boy gutt (c)
bed seng (c)	brave tapper, modig
go to bed legge seg (irreg.) sec. 42	bread bred (n)
bedroom soveværelse (n)	break (vb) brekke (irreg.) sec. 28
beer øl (n)	breakfast frokost (c)
before før, innen	bright lys
begin begynne	bring (vb) bringe (irreg.) secs 21, 28
beginning begynnelse (c)	Britain Storbritannia
behaviour atferd, oppførsel (c)	British britisk
behind bak	brother bror (c)
Belgian belgier (c), belgisk	brother-in-law svoger (c)
Belgium Belgia	brown brun
believe tro	build bygge
belong to tilhøre	building bygning (c)
bend (vb) bøye	burn (vb) brenne
bend down (vb) bøye seg sec. 42	bus buss (c)
besides forresten	business forretning (c)
better bedre	busy travel, opptatt
between mellom	but men
big stor	buy kjøpe
bill regnning (c)	by av, ved
bird fugl (c)	by the way forresten
birthday present fødselsdag- gave (c)	café kafé (c)
black sort, svart	cake kake (c)
blame skyld (c)	call (vb) kalle, tilkalle
bleed blø	can (to be able) kan (irreg.) sec. 29
blouse blouse (c)	

Canada Canada  
 Canadian kanadier (c),  
     kanadisk  
 car bil (c)  
 car driver bilfører (c)  
 care omsorg (c)  
 carpet teppe (n)  
 carry bære (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
 cash (vb) innløse, heve  
 cash desk kasse (c)  
 catch (vb) fange, ta  
 cause sak, årsak (c)  
 ceiling tak (n)  
 celebrate (vb) feire  
 certain viss, sikker  
 certainly javel  
 chair stol (c)  
 chairman formann (c)  
 change (vb) forandre (seg)  
 cheese ost (c)  
 cheque sjekk (c)  
 child barn (c)  
 China Kina  
 choice valg (n)  
 Christmas jul (c)  
 church kirke (c)  
 cinema kino (n)  
 city by (c)  
 clean (vb) rense  
 cling klynde seg  
 close (vb) lukke  
 clothes klær (cpl)  
 cloud sky (c)  
 clumsy klosset  
 cluster klynde (c)  
 coach trener (c)  
 coast kyst (c)  
 cod torsk (c)  
 coffee kaffe (c)  
 cold kald  
 cold forkjølelse (c)  
     to have a cold å være forkjølet

collect (vb) samle, hente  
 colour farge (c)  
 come komme (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
 comfortable behagelig  
 competition konkurranse (c)  
 complain (of) klage (over, på)  
 complete(lly) fullstendig  
 congratulate gratulere,  
     lykkeske  
 considerable betydelig  
 content fornøyd, tilfreds  
 conversation samtale (c)  
 corner hjørne (n)  
 correct riktig  
 cost (vb) koste  
 count (vb) telle, regne  
 count on regne med  
 couple par (n)  
 course kurs (n)  
 cousin søskensbarn (n)  
     female cousin kusine (c)  
     male cousin fetter (c)  
 cover (vb) dekke  
 cow ku (f) secs 1, 2  
 crawl (vb) krype (irreg.)  
     sec. 55, voc.  
 crazy gal  
 credit card kreditkort (n)  
 cross (vb) krysse, gå over  
 crossroads veikryss (n)  
 cruise sjøreise (c)  
 cry (vb) gråte (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
 cupboard skap (n)  
 curious spent  
 curse (vb) skjelle ut  
 customer kunde (c)  
 cut (vb) skjære (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
  
 daily daglig  
 damage skade (c)  
 dangerous farlig  
 date dato (c)

daughter datter (c)  
 day dag (c)  
 dear kjær  
 debt gjeld (c)  
 decide bestemme  
 deck dekk (n)  
 decrease (vb) synke  
 defeat nederlag (n)  
 degree grad (c)  
 delicious nydelig  
 demand (vb) kreve  
 department store  
     varemagasin (n)  
 depend (on) avhenge (av)  
 depressed deprimert, nedtrykt  
 destination bestemmelsessted  
     (n)  
 die dø (irreg.) secs 21, 28  
 difficult vanskelig  
 difficulty vanskelighet (c)  
 dinner middag (c)  
 disappoint skuffe  
 discourage ta motet fra  
 distinct klar, tydelig  
 divorce (vb) skille seg  
 do gjøre (irreg.) secs 21, 28  
     that'll do det klarer seg  
 doctor lege, doktor (c)  
 dog hund (c)  
 door dør (c)  
 doubt (vb) tvile  
 down ned, nede sec. 31  
 downwards nedover  
 dream drøm (c)  
 dress (vb) kle (på seg)  
 dress kjole (c)  
 drink (vb) drikke (irreg.) secs  
     22, 28  
 drive (vb) kjøre  
 driver bilfører (c)  
 during under

each hver, enhver sec. 38  
 each other hverandre  
 eager ivrig  
 early tidlig  
 Easter påske (c)  
 easy lett  
 eat spise  
 education undervisning,  
     oppdragelse (c)  
 effort anstrengelse (c)  
 either ... or enten ... eller  
 election valg (n)  
 empty tom  
 end (vb) ende, slutte  
 end ende, slutt (c)  
 engaged forlovet  
 England England  
 English engelsk  
 enjoy glede seg over, nyte  
 enough nok  
 enter gå inn  
 entertaining underholdende  
 enthusiasm begeistring (c)  
 entrance inngang (c)  
 entry entré (c)  
 envelope konvolutt (c)  
 Europe Europa  
 European europeisk, europeer (c)  
 even selv, endog  
 even if selv om  
 evening aften, kveld (c)  
 every hver sec. 38  
 everybody, everyone alle,  
     enhver  
 everything alt sec. 38  
 excuse (vb) unnskyldne  
 exercise øvelse (c)  
 expect vente, forvente  
 expensive dyr  
 experience erfaring (c)  
 express (vb) uttrykke  
 extra ekstra

face ansikt (n)  
 factory fabrikk (c)  
 fair lys, rimelig  
 fairly nokså, temmelig  
 fairy tale eventyr (n)  
 faithful trofast  
 fall (vb) falle (irreg.) sec. 55, voc.  
 family familie (c)  
 famous berømt  
 far langt  
 farm bondegård (c)  
 farmer bonde (c)  
 far-off fjern  
 fashionable moderne  
 fast fort  
 father far (c)  
 feel føle  
 fence gjerde (n)  
 fetch hente  
 fill fylle  
 finally til slutt  
 find finne (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
 fine fin(t)  
 finish (vb) avslutte  
 firm firma (n)  
 first først  
 fish fisk (c)  
 fishing fiske (n), fisking (c)  
     go fishing dra på fisketur  
 fishing boat fiskerbåt (c)  
 fit (vb) passe  
 fit frisk, i form  
 floor gulv (n)  
 flower blomst (c)  
 fly (vb) fly(ge) (irreg.) sec. 55,  
     voc.  
 foal føll (n)  
 foggy tåket  
 food mat (c)  
 fool tosk (c)  
 foolish dum  
 football match fotballkamp (c)

for for  
 for instance for eksempel  
 forehead panne (c)  
 foreigner utlending (c)  
 forest skog (c)  
 forget glemme  
 forgive tilgi (irreg.) Chapter 8,  
     page 125  
 fork gaffel (c)  
 fortunately heldigvis  
 forward fremover  
 France Frankrike  
 freeze (vb) fryse (irreg.) secs 22,  
     28  
 French fransk  
 fresh frisk, fersk  
 fridge kjøleskap (n)  
 friend venn (c)  
 frighten skremme  
 from fra  
 front: in front of foran  
 front door entrédør (c)  
 fruit frukt (c)  
 fry (vb) steke  
 fuel brensel (n)  
 full (of) full (av)  
 fun moro (c)  
 funny morsom, rar  
 fur pels (c)  
 garden hage (c)  
 general generell, alminnelig  
 German tysk  
 Germany Tyskland  
 get få, bli (irreg.) secs 30, voc., 37  
 get up stå opp (irreg.) sec. 63,  
     voc.  
 girl pike (c), jente (f)  
 give gi (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
 give up oppgi  
 glacier bre (c)  
 glass glass (n)

go gå (irreg.) secs 22, 28, reise  
 go on fortsette (irreg.) sec. 55,  
     voc.  
 goat geit (f)  
 gold gull (n)  
 good god  
 goodbye adjø, farvel  
 goods varer (cppl)  
 gradually litt etter litt  
 Great Britain Storbritannia  
 Greece Hellas  
 green grønn  
 greeting hilsen (c)  
 grocery kolonialhandel (c)  
 grow vokse  
 guest gjest (c)  
 Gulf Stream Golfstrømmen  
 hair hår (n)  
 half halv  
 ham skinke (c)  
 hand hånd (c)  
 handbag veske (c)  
 handkerchief lommekørkle (n)  
 hang henge  
 happy glad, lykkelig  
 hard hard, vanskelig, kraftig  
 hardly knapt, neppe  
 hat hatt (c)  
 have ha (irreg.) see Index  
 have to (must) måtte (irreg.)  
     sec. 29  
 head hode (n)  
 headache hodepine (c)  
 health helse (c)  
 hear høre  
 heart hjerte (n)  
 heat varme (c)  
 heavy tung  
 help (vb) hjelpe (irreg.) secs 22,  
     28  
 her hennes secs. 15, 19

here her, hit sec. 31  
 hers hennes sec. 16  
 hesitate nöle  
 hide gjemme (seg)  
 high høy  
 him sec. 19  
 his hans secs 15, 16  
 hole hull (n)  
 home hjem sec. 31  
     at home hjemme  
 homework leksler (cppl)  
 hope (vb) håpe  
 hospital sykehus (n)  
 hostess vertinne (c)  
 hot varm  
 hotel hotell (n)  
 hour time (c)  
 house hus (n)  
 how hvordan sec. 11  
 how are you? hvordan står  
     det til?  
 how many hvor mange  
 how much hvor mye  
 hungry sulten  
 hurry (vb) skynde seg  
 husband (ekte)mann (c)  
 hut hytte (f)  
 ice is (c)  
 ice cream iskrem (c)  
 idea idé (c)  
 if hvis, om secs 46, 48, 49  
 ill syk  
 immediately straks  
 immensely umåtelig  
 important viktig  
 impossible umulig  
 in (prep) i secs 52, 57  
 in (adv) inn, inne sec. 31  
 in order to for å sec. 60  
 increase (vb) øke  
 indeed virkelig

**information** opplysninger  
 (cpl)  
**inland** innenlands (adv),  
 innland (n)  
**inside** innenfor, inne sec. 31  
**insure** forsikre  
**insurance company**  
 forsikringsselskap (n)  
**interested** (in) interessert (i)  
**invitation** innbydelse (c)  
**invite** be (irreg.) sec. 31, voc.  
**Ireland** Irland  
**Irish** irsk  
**Italy** Italia  
**Italian** italiener (c), italiensk  
  
**jam** syltetøy (n)  
**Japan** Japan  
**Japanese** japansk  
**job** jobb (c), arbeid (n)  
**join** (vb) bli med  
**judgement** dom (c)  
**jump** hoppe  
**just** nettopp, akkurat  
**just as** like, likså  
  
**keep on** fortsette (irreg.) sec.  
 55, voc.  
**keep up with** være på  
 høyde med  
**key** nøkkel (c)  
**kill** drepe  
**kind** slag (n)  
**kind snill**  
**kindness** snillhet (c)  
**king** konge (c)  
**kitchen** kjøkken (n)  
**knee** kne (n)  
**knife** kniv (c)  
**knock** (vb) banke  
**know** vite (irreg.) sec. 29

**lady** dame (c)  
**lake** vann (n)  
**lamp** lampe (c)  
**language** språk (n)  
**Lapp** same (c)  
**large** stor  
**last** sist  
 at last til slutt  
**late** sen  
**lazy** doven  
**learn** lære  
**least** minst  
 at least i det minste  
**leave** (vb) reise, forlate (irreg.)  
 sec. 35, voc.  
**left** on/to the left til venstre  
**leg** ben (n)  
**less** mindre sec. 30  
**lesson** leksjon, lekse (c)  
**let** la (irreg.) sec. 28  
**letter** brev (n)  
**lie** ligge (irreg.) sec. 63, voc.  
**life** liv (n)  
**light** lett, lys  
**lighten** letne  
**like** (vb) like  
 I'd like jeg vil (gjerne) ha  
**limp** (vb) halte  
**listen** (to) lytte (til)  
 little liten, lite secs 6, 7  
 a little litt  
**live** leve, bo  
**load** (vb) lesse  
**loaf of bread** brød (n)  
**lock** (vb) låse  
**long** lang, lengre secs 18B, 30  
**look** (at) se (på) (irreg.) secs 22,  
 28  
**look for** se etter  
**lorry** lastebil (c)  
**lose** tape, miste  
 get lost gå seg vill

**lot**: a lot mye, atskillig  
 lots of mange  
**loud** (adv) hoyt  
**love** (vb) elske, like  
**love** kjærlighet (c)  
**lovely** deilig  
**lower** (vb) senke  
**luck** lykke, hell (n)  
**lucky** heldig  
**luggage** bagasje (c)  
**lunch** lunsj (c)  
**luncheon** meat skinkerull (c)  
  
**mad** gal  
**magnificent** storslagen,  
 praktfull  
**main dish** hovedrett (c)  
**make** gjøre sec. 21  
**man** mann (c)  
**manufacturer** fabrikant (c)  
**many** mange  
**map** kart (n)  
**market** marked, torg (n)  
**marry** gifte seg med  
 get married gifte seg  
**may** kan sec. 29  
**me** meg sec. 19  
**meadow** eng (f)  
**meal** måltid (n)  
**mean** (vb) mene  
**meat** kjøtt (n)  
**meet** (vb) møte, treffte (irreg.)  
 sec. 31, voc.  
**meeting** møte (n)  
**mention** (vb) nevne  
**merchant** fleet handelsflåte (c)  
**merry** munter  
**midday** middag  
**middle**: in the middle of midt i  
**middle-aged** middelaldrende  
**midnight** midnatt  
**mild** mild

**milk** melk (c)  
**mine** min, mitt, mine sec. 16  
**minute** minutt (n)  
**miss** (vb) savne, gå glipp av  
**mitt** vott (c)  
**modern** moderne  
**moment** øyeblikk (n)  
**money** penger (cpl)  
**month** måned (c)  
**more** mer  
**morning** morgen (c)  
**mother** mor (c)  
**motive** hensikt (c)  
**mountain** fjell (n)  
**mourn** sørge (over)  
**much** mye, meget  
**museum** museum (n)  
**must** (to have to) må (irreg.)  
 sec. 29  
**my** min, mitt, mine secs 15, 16  
**myself** (jeg) selv sec. 42  
  
**name** navn (n)  
**what is your name?**  
 hva heter du?  
**naturally** naturligvis  
**near** nær  
**necessary** nødvendig  
**need** (vb) trenge  
**neighbour** nabo (c)  
**neither ... nor** verken ... eller  
**Netherlands** Nederland  
**never** aldri  
**new** ny  
**newspaper** avis (c)  
**next** neste  
**next to** ved siden av  
**nice** god, söt, hyggelig  
**niece** niese (c)  
**night** natt, kveld  
**nightclub** nattklubb (c)  
**no** nei, ingen sec. 38

no longer ikke lenger  
 no more ikke mer  
 no one ingen *sec. 38*  
 noise bråk (*n*), lyd (*c*)  
 north nord  
 North Cape Nordkapp  
 north wind nordavind (*c*)  
 Norway Norge  
 Norwegian norsk,  
     nordmann (*c*)  
 nothing ingenting *sec. 38*  
 now nå  
 number nummer, (an)tall (*n*)  
  
 occur hende  
 of av  
 of course selvfølgelig  
 office kontor (*n*)  
 often ofte  
 old gammel *sec. 18B*  
 on på  
 once en gang  
     once again enda en gang  
     at once med én gang  
 one-way traffic enveiskjøring  
     (*c*)  
 only bare  
 open (*vb*) åpne  
 open åpen  
 opera opera (*c*)  
 opportunity anledning (*c*)  
 or eller  
 order (*vb*) bestille  
     in order to for å *sec. 60*  
 ordinary vanlig  
 organise organisere  
 other annen *sec. 38*  
 otherwise ellers  
 ought to bør, burde *sec. 29*  
 our vår *sec. 15*  
 ours vår *sec. 16*  
 out ut, ute *sec. 31*

outside utenfor, ute  
 over over  
 overcoat frakk (*c*)  
 overcrowded overfylt  
 oversleep forsove seg  
 own (*vb*) eie  
 own egen  
 owner eier (*c*)  
  
 pack (*vb*) pakke  
 paint (*vb*) male  
 palace slott (*n*)  
 parents foreldre (*cpl*)  
 park park (*c*)  
 part del (*c*)  
 party selskap (*n*)  
 passport pass (*n*)  
 pay betale  
 peace fred (*c*)  
 pedestrian fotgjenger (*c*)  
 people mennesker (*cpl*)  
 perhaps kanskje  
 picture bilde (*n*)  
 piece stykke (*n*)  
 plan planlegge (*irreg.*)  
     *Chapter 7, page 111*  
 plan plan (*c*)  
 plane fly (*n*)  
 play (*vb*) leke, spille  
 pleasant hyggelig  
 please vær så snill/god  
 please (*vb*) behag  
 pleased fornøyd  
 pleasure glede  
 plenty mange, mye  
 pluck ribbe  
 plumber rørlegger (*c*)  
 point poeng (*n*)  
 pointed spiss  
 Poland Polen  
 polar bear isbjørn (*c*)  
 police politi (*n*)

politician politiker (*c*)  
 poor fattig, stakkars  
 popular populær  
 pork chop svinekotelett (*c*)  
 possible mulig  
 possibility mulighet (*c*)  
 postcard (post)kort (*n*)  
 post office postkontor (*n*)  
 potato potet (*c*)  
 pour helle, skylle  
 prefer foretrekke (*irreg.*)  
     *Chapter 11, page 168*  
 prepare forberede, lage  
 pretty vakker, pen  
 prevent unngå (*irreg.*) *Chapter 10, page 157*, forebygge  
 price pris (*c*)  
 probable sannsynlig  
 probably sannsynligvis  
 produce (*vb*) produsere, lage  
 profession yrke (*n*)  
 promise (*vb*) love  
 properly pyntelig  
 proposal forslag, tilbud (*n*)  
 protect beskytte  
 proud stolt  
 pull (*vb*) trekke (*irreg.*) *sec. 22*  
 pull oneself together ta seg sammen  
 put (*vb*) sette, legge (*irreg.*)  
     *Chapter 11, page 167*  
 put on weight legge på seg  
  
 question spørsmål (*n*)  
 quick rask  
 quickly raskt, fort  
 quilted anorak boblejakke (*c*)  
 quite ganske, nokså

railway station jernbane-stasjon (*c*)  
 rain regne

raincoat regnfrakk (*c*)  
 rather nokså, temmelig  
 reach (*vb*) rekke, (*irreg.*) *sec. 47*, voc. nå  
 react reagere  
 read lese  
 readily gjerne, lett  
 ready ferdig  
 realise innse  
 really virkelig  
 reason grunn, årsak (*c*)  
 reasonable rimelig  
 recently nylig  
 reckon with regne med  
 recommend anbefale  
 recover bli frisk  
 red rød  
 refuse (*vb*) nekte  
 regards hilsener (*cpl*)  
 regret (*vb*) angre  
 reindeer reinsdyr (*n*)  
 rejoice (at) glæde seg (over)  
 relax slappe av  
 remain (for)bli (*irreg.*) *secs 22, 28*  
 remember (*vb*) huske  
 repair (*vb*) reparere  
 repair reparasjon (*c*)  
 report (*vb*) rapportere  
 report reportasje (*c*)  
 resemble ligner  
 respect (*vb*) respektere  
 responsibility ansvar (*n*)  
 rest (*vb*) hvile seg  
 rest rest (*c*)  
 restaurant restaurant (*c*)  
 return (*vb*) vende tilbake  
 ribbon bånd (*n*)  
 rich rik  
 rid: get rid of bli kvitt  
 right riktig; høyre  
     on/to the right til høyre  
     be right ha rett

rise (*vb*) stå opp (*irreg.*) sec. 30,  
voc.  
road vei (c)  
rock klippe (c)  
room rom, værelse (n)  
round rund(t)  
run (*vb*) løpe (*irreg.*) secs 22, 28  
rural district bygd (f)  
  
sad trist  
sail (*vb*) seile  
sailing boat seilbåt (c)  
salary gasje (c)  
salmon laks (c)  
salt-water fish saltvannsfisk (c)  
sandwich sandwich (c)  
open sandwich smørbrød (n)  
sausage pølse (c)  
say si (*irreg.*) secs 22 voc., 28  
scar att (n)  
scarf skjerf (n)  
school skole (c)  
Scotland Skottland  
Scottish skotsk  
sea sjø (c), hav (n)  
seal sel (c)  
season årstid (c)  
seat sete (n)  
see se (*irreg.*) secs 22, 28  
seem synes sec. 54, se ut  
seldom sjeldent  
sell selge (*irreg.*) secs 21, 28  
send sende  
sense sans (c)  
serious alvorlig  
serve servere  
several flere  
shall skal sec. 29  
shame skam (c)  
shape form (c)  
share aksje (c)  
shellfish skalldyr (n)

ship skip (n)  
shipping skipsfart (c)  
shirt skjorte (c)  
shoe sko (c)  
shop (*vb*) handle, gjøre  
inkjøp  
shop butikk (c)  
shop assistant ekspeditor (c)  
shopkeeper kjøpmann (c)  
short kort  
show (*vb*) vise  
shower dusj, regnskur (c)  
shut (*vb*) lukke  
side side (c)  
silly dum, tåpelig  
silver sølv (n)  
since siden  
sister søster (c)  
sister-in-law svigerinne (c)  
sit (*vb*) sitte (*irreg.*) sec. 63, voc.  
sit down sette seg (*irreg.*) sec.  
43, voc.  
sitting room stue (c)  
situated: to be s. ligge (*irreg.*)  
sec. 63, voc.  
skate (*vb*) gå på skøyter  
ski (*vb*) gå på ski  
skin (*vb*) flå<sup>1</sup>  
skirt skjørt (n)  
sky himmel (c)  
sledge (*vb*) ake  
sleep (*vb*) sove (*irreg.*),  
Chapter 6, page 99  
slice skive (c)  
slim (*vb*) slanke seg  
slow langsom  
small liten secs 6, 7  
smart smart, gløgg  
smell lukt (c)  
smile (*vb*) smile  
smoke (*vb*) røyke  
snow sne, snø (c)

so så  
some noen sec. 38  
something noe sec. 38  
son sønn (c)  
soon snart  
as soon as så snart som  
sorry lei, bedrøvet  
I'm sorry to say desverre  
soup suppe (c)  
south (of) sør (for)  
Spain Spania  
Spanish spansk  
speak snakke  
so to speak så å si  
spectacles briller (cpl)  
speed fart (c)  
spend (money) bruke  
spend (time) tilbringe (*irreg.*)  
sec. 28, voc.  
spoon skje (c)  
sportswear sportsklær (cpl)  
spring vår (c)  
square torg (n)  
squirrel ekorn (n)  
staircase trapp (c)  
stairway trappeoppgang (c)  
stand (*vb*) stå *irreg.* sec. 63, voc.  
start (*vb*) begynne  
starter forrett (c)  
station stasjon (c)  
stay (*vb*) bli (*irreg.*)  
secs 22, 28, bo  
stay opphold (n)  
steal stjele (*irreg.*) sec. 43, voc.  
steep bratt  
still (adj) stille  
still (adv) ennå, enda  
stone stein (c)  
stop stopp (n)  
storehouse lager (n)  
straight on rett frem  
street gate (c)

strike streik (c)  
strong sterkt  
study (*vb*) studere  
succeed lykkes sec. 54  
sudden(ly) plutselig  
suffer (from) lide (av) (*irreg.*)  
Chapter 12, page 145  
suit dress (c)  
suitcase koffert (c)  
summer sommer (c)  
summit topp (c)  
supermarket supermarked (n)  
supper aftensmat (c)  
support (*vb*) støtte  
sure sikker  
surprise (*vb*) overraske  
surprise overraskelse (c)  
survive overleve  
suspicion mistanke (c)  
sweater genser (c)  
Sweden Sverige  
sweet söt  
sweets godter, søtsaker (cpl)  
swim (*vb*) svemme, bade  
swimsuit badedrakt (c)  
Switzerland Sveits  
  
table bord (n)  
take ta (*irreg.*) secs 22, 28  
take care of ta seg av  
take part delta  
talk (*vb*) snakke  
tall hög  
tape bånd (n)  
taste (*vb*) smake  
taxi drosje (c)  
tea te (c)  
teacher lærer (c)  
team lag (c)  
tease erte  
telephone telefon (c)  
television fjernsyn (n)

tell fortelle (irreg.) Chapter 7,  
page 112  
to tell the truth sant å si  
term frist, sikt (c)  
terms betingelser (cpl)  
terrible forferdelig  
terrified vettskremt  
than enn  
thank you! takk!  
thanks to takket være  
that, this sec. 13  
that at sec. 50  
that much så mye  
thaw (vb) tine, tö  
their deres sec. 15  
theirs deres sec. 16  
then da, så, derpå  
there der, dit sec. 31  
these, those sec. 13  
thin tynn  
think tenke, tro  
thrive trives sec. 54  
through gjennom  
go through with gjennomføre  
throw kaste  
ticket billett (c)  
tie slips  
tights strømpebukser (cpl)  
till til, inntil  
time tid, gang (c)  
by this time på denne tiden  
have a good time hygge seg  
some other time en annen  
gang  
tired trett  
to til; å  
today i dag  
together sammen  
tomorrow i morgen  
too også  
too much for mye  
tooth tann (c)

towards mot  
town by (c)  
train tog (n)  
translation oversettelse (c)  
travel (vb) reise  
travel agency reisebyrå (c)  
travel sickness reisesyke (c)  
traveller's cheque reisesjekk (c)  
tree tre (n)  
trip reise (c)  
trouble strev, bry (n)  
trousers buksar (cpl)  
true sant  
trust (vb) stole på  
truth sannhet (i)  
try (vb) prøve  
turn (vb) snu, vende  
turn on skru på  
twist (vb) vri  
  
umbrella paraply (c)  
under under  
understand forstå (irreg.) sec.  
30, voc.  
underwear undertøy (n)  
unfortunately uheldigvis  
United States De forente stater  
unless med mindre  
until til, inntil  
up opp, oppe sec. 31  
upwards oppover  
use (vb) bruke  
used to vant til  
usual vanlig  
usually vanligvis

visit (vb) besøke  
visitor besøkende, gjest (c)  
  
wait (for) vente (på)  
waiter kelner (c)  
wake up vekke, våkne  
walk (vb) gå (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
go for a walk gå en tur,  
spasere  
walking tour, walk spasertur,  
fottur (c)  
wall vegg, mur (c)  
wallet lommebok (c)  
want (vb) ønske  
warehouse lager (n)  
warm varm  
wash (vb) vaske (seg)  
watch (vb) se på  
watch ur (n), klokke (c)  
waterfall foss (c)  
way vei (c)  
by the way forresten  
wear (vb) bruke  
weather vær (n)  
week uke (c)  
weekend helg (c)  
welcome velkommen  
well godt, vel, bra  
Welsh walisk  
wet våt  
what hva secs 11, 43  
what about hva med  
whatever hva ... enn sec. 43  
wheel ratt, hjul (n)  
when når, da secs. 11, 46  
where hvor sec. 11  
which hvilken sec. 11; som  
sec. 43  
while stund (c)  
while mens secs 45, 46  
white hvit  
  
year år (n)  
yellow gul  
yes ja  
yesterday i går  
young ung  
your din, Deres, deres sec. 15  
yours din, Deres, deres, sec. 16

## Norwegian-English

Although the following is not an exhaustive list of words found in the book, it will be helpful for quick reference. Numbers against some entries indicate sections where important points are explained. The list follows Norwegian alphabetical order: A-Z, Å, Ø, Ä.

adjø goodbye	arbeide work
aften (c) evening	arm (c) arm
aftensmat (c) supper	arr (n) scar
ake sledge	arrangere arrange
akkurat just	atferd (c) behaviour
aksje (c) share	atskillig a lot
alder (c) age	av of, by
aldri never	avhenge av depend on
all all	avis (c) newspaper
alle everybody, everyone	avslutte finish
allerede already	
alltid always	bad (n) bathroom
alminnelig general	bade swim
alt all, everything	badedrakt (c) swimsuit
altfor far too	badstue (c) sauna
alvorlig serious	bagasje (c) luggage
Amerika America	bak behind
amerikaner (c) American	bakover backwards
amerikansk American	bank (c) bank
anbefale recommend	banke knock
angre regret	bankran (n) bank robbery
ankomme til arrive at	bar (c) bar
anledning (c) opportunity	bare only, just
annen other	barn (c) child
ansikt (n) face	be (bad, bedt) invite, request
anstrengelse (c) effort	bedre better
ansvar (n) responsibility	bedrøvet sorry
antall (n) number	begeistring (c) enthusiasm
arbeid (n) work, job	begge both

begynne begin, start	bonde (c) farmer
begynnelse (c) beginning	bondegård (c) farm
behage please	bord (n) table
behagelig comfortable	bort, borte away
bekymre seg (om) worry	bortenfor beyond
(about)	bra well, fine
Belgia Belgium	ha det bra to feel well
belgier (c) Belgian	bratt steep
belgisk Belgian	bre (c) glacier
ben (n) leg	brekke (brakk, brukket)
berømt famous	break
beskytte protect	brenne burn
bestemme decide	brensel (n) fuel
bestemmelsessted (n)	brev (n) letter
destination	briller (cpl) spectacles
bestille book, order	bringe (brakte, brakt) bring
besøke visit	british British
besøkende (c) visitor	bror (c) brother
betale pay	bruke use, wear, spend
betingelser (cpl) terms	(money)
betydelig considerable	brun brown
bibliotek (n) library	bry (n) trouble
bil (c) car	bry seg (om) worry (about)
bilde (n) picture	brød (n) bread, loaf of bread
bilfører (c) car driver	brå sudden
billet (c) ticket	bråk (n) noise
bjørn (c) bear	bukk (n) bow
blandt among	bukser (cpl) trousers
bli (ble, blitt) become, get,	burde ought to
stay, remain	buss (c) bus
bli frisk recover	butikk (c) shop
bli kvitt get rid of	by (c) city, town
bli med join	bygd (f) rural district
blomst (c) flower	bygge build
bluse (c) blouse	bygning (c) building
blo	bære (bar, båret) carry
blå blue	bør ought to
blåse blow	bøye bend
det blåser it's windy	bøye seg bend down
bo stay, live	både ... og both ... and
bobblejakke (c) quilted anorak	bånd (n) ribbon, tape
bok (c) book	båt (c) boat

Canada Canada

da then; when  
dag (c) day  
daglig daily  
dame (c) lady  
Danmark Denmark  
danse dance  
dato (c) date  
datter (c) daughter  
De you (*sing. formal*)  
de secs 3, 7, 13 they; the; those  
deg you (*sing. informal*)  
deilig lovely  
dekk (n) deck  
dekke cover  
del (c) part  
delta (*deltok, deltatt*) take part  
dem them  
Dem you (*sing. formal*)  
den secs 3, 7, 13 it; the; that  
denne this  
deprimert depressed  
der there  
dere you (*pl. informal*)  
Dere you (*pl. formal*)  
deres their, theirs  
Deres your, yours  
derpå then  
dessverre I'm sorry to say  
det secs 3, 7, 13 it; the; that  
dette this  
din your, yours (*sing. informal*)  
disse these  
dit there  
ditt your, yours (*sing. informal*)  
doktor (c) doctor  
dom (c) judgement  
doven lazy  
dra (*drog, dradd*) go  
dra på fisketur go fishing

drepe kill  
dress (c) suit  
drikke (drakk, drukket) drink  
drosje (c) taxi  
drøm (c) dream  
du you (*sing. informal*)  
dukke opp appear  
dum foolish, silly  
dusj (c) shower  
dyr expensive  
dårlig bad, badly  
dø (døde, dødd) die  
dør (c) door  
  
egen own  
eie own  
eier (c) owner  
ekorn (n) squirrel  
eksempel (n) example  
ekspeditør (c) shop assistant  
ekstra extra  
ektemann (c) husband  
eller or  
ellers otherwise  
elske love  
en a, an  
enda although; still  
enda en another  
ende (c) end  
ende end  
endog even  
eng (f) meadow  
engel (c) angel  
engelsk English  
England England  
enhver everybody,  
everyone; each  
enn than  
ennå still, yet (*adv*)  
enten ... eller either ... or  
entré (c) entry  
entrédør (c) front door

enveiskjøring (c) one-way  
traffic  
eple (n) apple  
erfaring (c) experience  
erte tease  
et a, an  
etter after  
ettermiddag (c) afternoon  
etterpå afterwards  
ettersom as  
Europa Europe  
europpeer (c) European  
européisk European  
eventyr (n) fairy tale  
  
fabrikant (c) manufacturer  
fabrikk (c) factory  
falle (falt, falt) fall  
familie (c) family  
fange catch  
far (c) father  
farge (c) colour  
farlig dangerous  
fart (c) speed  
farvel goodbye  
fattig poor  
feil (c) mistake  
feilaktig wrong  
feire celebrate  
ferdig ready, finished  
ferie (c) holiday  
fersk fresh  
fetter (c) male cousin  
fin(t) fine, nice  
finne (fant, funnet) find  
firma (n) firm  
fisk (c) fish  
fiske (n) fishing  
fiskerbåt (c) fishing boat  
fisking (c) fishing  
fjell (n) mountain  
fjern far-off

fjernsyn (n) television  
flagg (n) flag  
flaske (c) bottle  
flere several; more  
fly (n) aeroplane  
fly(ge) (*fløy, fløyet*) fly  
flyplass (c) airport  
flå skin  
for for; too  
for ... siden ago  
for mye too much  
for å in order to  
foran in front of  
forandre (seg) change  
forberede prepare  
forbli (*forble, forblitt*) remain  
fordi because  
forebygge prevent  
foreldre (cpl) parents  
forente stater, De United States  
foretrekke (foretrak, foretrukket) prefer  
forferdelig terrible  
forhånd: på forhånd in advance  
forkjølelse (c) cold  
forkjølet: være f. to have a cold  
forlate (forlot, forlatt) leave  
forlovet engaged  
form (c) shape  
formann (c) chairman  
fornøyd pleased, content  
forresten besides, by the way  
forretning (c) business  
forrett (c) starter  
forsikre insure  
forsikringsselskap (n) insurance company  
forsinket late  
forslag (n) proposal

forsove seg oversleep	gammel old	grunn (c) reason	henge (hang, hengt) hang
forstå (forstod, forstått) understand	gang (c) time	grønn green	henne her
fort fast, quickly	en annen gang some other time	grønnsak (c) vegetable	hennes her, hers
fortelle (fortalte, fortalt) tell	en gang once	gråte (gråt, grått) cry	hensikt (c) motive
fortsette (fortsatte, fortsatt) go on, keep on	med én gang at once	gul yellow	hente fetch, collect
forvente expect	ganske quite, fairly	gull (n) gold	her here
foss (c) waterfall	gasje (c) salary	gulv (n) floor	herr Mr
fotballkamp (c) football match	gate (c) street	gutt (c) boy	hete (het, hett) be called
fotgjenger (c) pedestrian	geit (f) goat	gå (glkk, gått) walk, go, leave	heve cash
fottur (c) walking tour, walk	generell general	gå en tur go for a walk	heve seg tower
fra from	genser (c) sweater	gå glipp av miss	hilsen (c) greeting
frakk (c) overcoat	gi (gav, gitt) give	gå inn enter	hilsener (cpl) regards
Frankrike France	gifte seg (med) marry	gå over cross	himmel (c) sky
fransk French	gjeld (c) debt	gå på ski ski	hit here
fred (c) peace	gjelde apply to	gå på skøyter skate	hjelpe (hjalp, hjulpet) help
fremover forward	gjemme (seg) hide	gå seg vill get lost	hjem home
fri free	gjennom through	ha (hadde, hatt) have	hjemme at home
frisk fresh, fit	gjennomfare go through with	ha rett be right	hjerte (n) heart
frist (c) term	gjensyn reunion	hage (c) garden	hjul (n) wheel
frokost (c) breakfast	På gjensyn! See you later!	hake (c) chin	hjørne (n) corner
fru Mrs	gjerde (n) fence	halte limp	hode (n) head
frukt (c) fruit	gjerne readily	halv half	hodepine (c) headache
fryse (fros, frosset) freeze	jeg vil gjerne ha I'd like	ham him	hoppe jump
fugl (c) bird	gjest (c) guest, visitor	han he	hotell (n) hotel
full (av) full (of)	gjøre (gjorde, gjort) do, make	handelsflåte (c) merchant fleet	hovedrett (c) main dish
fullstendig complete(ly)	gjøre innkjøp shop (vb)	handle shop	hull (n) hole
fylle fill	glad happy	hans his	hun she
få few	glass (n) glass	hard hard	hund (c) dog
få (fikk, fått) get	glede pleasure	hatt (c) hat	hus (n) house
fødselsgave (c) birthday present	glede seg over rejoice at, enjoy	hav (n) sea	huske remember
føle feel	glede seg til look forward to	havn (c) port	hva what
følge go with, follow	glemme forget	hel whole; all	hva med what about
føll (n) foal	gløgg quick-witted	heldig lucky	hva som enn whatever
før before	god good, nice	heldigvis fortunately	hvem who, whom
først first	godt well	helg (c) weekend	hver every, each
gaffel (c) fork	godta (godtok, godtatt) accept	hell (n) luck	hverandre each other
gal crazy, mad, wrong	godter (cpl) sweets	Hellas Greece	hville seg rest
galt med wrong with	Golfstrømmen Gulf Stream	helle pour	hvilken which
	grad (c) degree	helse (c) health	hvis if
	gratulere congratulate	helt completely	hvít white
	grense (c) border	hende occur, happen	hvor where
			hvor mange how many

hvor mye	how much	ingen	no one, none, no	kald	cold
hvordan	how	ingenting	nothing	kalle	call
hvordan står det til?	how are you?	inn	in	kan (irreg.)	can, may
hvorfor	why	innbydelse (c)	invitation	kanadier (c)	Canadian
hygge seg	have a good time	inne	in, inside	kanadisk	Canadian
hyggelig	pleasant, nice	innen	within, before	kanskje	perhaps
hytte (f)	hut	innenfor	inside	kart (n)	map
høre	hear	innenlands	inland	kasse (c)	cash desk
høst (c)	autumn	inngang (c)	entrance	kaste	throw
høy	high, tall	inni	within	kelner (c)	waiter
høyde	height	innland (n)	inland	Kina	China
være på høyde med	keep up with	innløse	cash	kino (n)	cinema
høyre	right	innrømme	admit	kirke (c)	church
høyt	loud	innse (innså, innsett)	realise	kjempe	fight
hånd (c)	hand	inntil	till, until	kjenne	know
håpe	hope	interessert (i)	interested (in)	kjedelig	boring
hår (n)	hair	Ireland	Ireland	kjole (c)	dress
i	in	irk	Irish	kjær	dear
i dag	today	is (c)	ice	kjæreste (c)	boyfriend / girlfriend
i det minste	at least	isbjørn (c)	polar bear	kjærlighet (c)	love
i fjor	last year	iskrem (c)	ice cream	kjøkken (n)	kitchen
i form	fit	Italia	Italy	kjøleskap (n)	fridge
i går	yesterday	italiener (c)	Italian	kjøpe	buy
i morgen	tomorrow	italiensk	Italian	kjøpmann (c)	shopkeeper
i morgen tidlig	tomorrow morning	ivrig	eager	kjøre	drive
i morges	this morning	ja	yes	kjøtt (n)	meat
i natt	last night	Japan	Japan	klage (over, på)	complain (of)
i sovn	asleep	japansk	Japanese	klar	distinct
i utlandet	abroad	javel	certainly	klare	seg do, be enough
idé (c)	idea	jeg	I	klasse (c)	class
idet	as	jeg vil (gjerne) ha	I'd like	kle (på seg)	dress
idrett (c)	sport	jente (f)	girl	klippe (c)	rock
igjen	again	jernbanestasjon (c)	railway station	klokke (c)	watch
ikke	not	jobb (c)	job	klosset	clumsy
ikke lenger	no longer	jord (c)	earth	klynge (c)	cluster
ikke mer	no more	jul (c)	Christmas	klynge	seg cling
ikke noe	nothing	kafé (c)	café	klæ (cpl)	clothes
ikke noen	no	kaffe (c)	coffee	knapt	hardly
		kake (c)	cake	kne (n)	knee
				kniv (c)	knife
				koffert (c)	suitcase
				koke	boil
				kolonialhandel (c)	grocery
				komme (kom, kommet)	come
				komme (frem) (til)	arrive (at)
				det kommer på	it comes to
				kone (c)	wife
				konge (c)	king
				konkurranse (c)	competition
				kontor (n)	office
				konvolutt (c)	envelope
				kopp (c)	cup
				kort (n)	postcard
				kort	short
				koste	cost
				kraftig	hard, strong
				kredittkort (n)	credit card
				kreve	demand
				krig (c)	war
				krysse	cross
				krype (krøp, krøpet)	crawl
				ku (f)	cow
				kunde (c)	customer
				kunne	to be able
				kurs (n)	course
				kusine (c)	female cousin
				kveld (c)	evening, night
				kvinne (c)	woman
				kyst (c)	coast
				la (lot, latt)	let
				lag (c)	team
				lage	make, prepare, produce
				lager (n)	storehouse, ware- house
				laks (c)	salmon
				lampe (c)	lamp
				lang	long
				langs	along
				langsom	slow
				langt	far
				lastebil (c)	lorry
				lege (c)	doctor

legge (la, lagt) put  
 legge på seg put on weight  
 legge seg go to bed  
 lei sorry  
 leke play  
 lekse (c) lesson  
 lekser (cpl) homework  
 leksjon (c) lesson  
 lenge for a long time  
 lese read  
 lesse load  
 letne lighten  
 lett easy, light; readily  
 leve live  
 lide (led, lidt) (av) suffer  
     (from)  
 ligge (lå, ligget) lie,  
     be situated  
 ligne resemble, be like  
 like like, love, enjoy  
 like just (as)  
 likså just as  
 likså ... som as ... as  
 lite, liten small, little  
 litt a little  
 litt etter litt gradually  
 liv (n) life  
 lommebok (c) wallet  
 lommekortkle (n) hand-  
     kerchief  
 love promise  
 luft (c) air  
 lukke close, shut  
 lukt (c) smell  
 lunsj (c) lunch  
 lure wonder  
 lyd (c) noise  
 lykke (n) luck  
 lykkelig happy  
 lykkes succeed  
 lykkenske congratulate  
 lys bright, light, fair

lyst (c) desire  
     har De lyst til would you  
     like  
 lytte (til) listen (to)  
 lære learn  
 lærer (c) teacher  
 løpe (løp, løpt) run  
 låse lock  
  
 male paint  
 mange sec. 18B lots of, many,  
     plenty  
 mann (c) man, husband  
 mannskap (n) team  
 marked (n) market  
 mat (c) food  
 med with  
 med én gang at once  
 med mindre unless  
 meg me  
 meget very; much  
 melk (c) milk  
 mellom between  
 men but  
 mene mean  
 menneske (n) person  
 mens while  
 mer more  
 merke notice  
 merkelig peculiar  
 middag midday; dinner  
 middelaldrende middle-aged  
 midnatt midnight  
 midt i in the middle of  
 midt iblant amid  
 mild mild  
 min my, mine  
 mindre less  
 mine my, mine  
 minst at least, least  
 minutt (n) minute  
 mistanke (c) suspicion

miste lose  
 mitt my, mine  
 moderne fashionable, modern  
 modig brave  
 mor (c) mother  
 morgen (c) morning  
 moro (c) fun  
 morsom funny  
 mot against, towards  
 motta (mottok, mottalt) accept  
 mulig possible  
 mulighet (c) possibility  
 munter merry  
 mur (c) wall  
 museum (n) museum  
 mye plenty, a lot, much  
 møte (n) meeting  
 møte meet  
 må must  
 måltid (n) meal  
 måned (c) month  
 måtte have to (must)  
  
 nabo (c) neighbour  
 natt night  
 nattklubb (c) nightclub  
 naturligvis naturally  
 navn (n) name  
 ned, nede down  
 nederlag (n) defeat  
 Nederland Netherlands  
 nedover downwards  
 nedtrykt depressed  
 nei no  
 nekte refuse  
 neppe hardly  
 nese (n) nose  
 neste next  
 nettopp just  
 nevne mention  
 niese (c) niece  
 noe something, anything

noen any, some, anyone,  
     someone  
 nok enough  
 nokså fairly, quite, rather  
 nord north  
 nordavind (c) north wind  
 Nordkapp North Cape  
 nordmann (c) Norwegian  
 Norge Norway  
 norsk Norwegian  
 nummer (n) number  
 ny new  
 nydelig delicious  
 nylig recently  
 nytte enjoy  
 nær near  
 nødvendig necessary  
 nøkkel (c) key  
 næle hesitate  
 nå now  
 nå reach  
 når when, whenever

ofte often  
 og and  
 også also, too  
 om about, in (time)  
 om if, whether  
 omsorg (c) care  
 omrent about  
 onkel (c) uncle  
 opera (c) opera  
 opp up  
 oppdage discover  
 oppdragelse (c) education  
 oppe up  
 oppførsl (c) behaviour  
 oppgi (oppgav, oppgitt)  
     give up  
 opphold (n) stay  
 opplevelse (c) experience  
 opplysninger (cpl) information

oppmerksomt attentively  
 oppover upwards  
 opptatt busy  
 ordne arrange  
 organisere organise  
 oss us  
 ost (c) cheese  
 over above, over  
 overfylt overcrowded  
 overleve survive  
 overraske surprise  
 overraskelse (c) surprise  
 oversettelse (c) translation  
  
 pakke pack  
 panne (c) forehead  
 par (n) couple  
 paraply (c) umbrella  
 park (c) park  
 pass (n) passport  
 passe fit, be suitable  
 passe på to keep an eye on  
 pels (c) fur  
 pen pretty, nice  
 pengar (cpl) money  
 pike (c) girl  
 plan (c) plan  
 planlegge (planla, planlagt)  
     plan  
 plutselig sudden(ly)  
 poeng (n) point  
 Polen Poland  
 politi (n) police  
 politiker (c) politician  
 populær popular  
 pose (c) bag  
 postkontor (n) post office  
 postkort (n) postcard  
 potet (c) potato  
 praktfull magnificent  
 pris (c) price  
 produsere produce

prøve try  
 pyntelig properly  
 pølse (c) sausage  
 på on, at  
 på denne tiden by this time  
 pålegg (n) topping, filling  
 påske (c) Easter  
  
 rapportere report  
 rar funny  
 rask quick  
 ratt (n) steering wheel  
 reagere react  
 redd (for) afraid (of)  
 regne rain; count, calculate  
 regne med count on, reckon  
     with  
 regnfrakk (c) raincoat  
 regning (c) bill  
 regnskur (c) rainshower  
 reinsdyr (n) reindeer  
 reise (c) trip, journey  
 reise go, travel, leave  
 reisebyrå (c) travel agency  
 reisesjekk (c) traveller's  
     cheque  
 reisesyke (c) travel sickness  
 rekke (rakte, rakt) reach  
 renne (rant, rent) run  
 rense clean  
 reparasjon (c) repair  
 reparere repair  
 reportasje (c) report  
 respektere respect  
 rest (c) rest  
 restaurant (c) restaurant  
 rett right  
     ha rett be right  
 rett frem straight on  
 ribbe pluck  
 rik rich  
 riktig correct, right

rimelig reasonable, fair  
 ro (c) quiet  
 rom room  
 rund(t) round  
 rød red  
 røylike smoke  
 rørlegger (c) plumber  
 råd (n) advice; means  
     ha råd til be able to afford  
  
 sak (c) cause  
 saltvannsfisk (c) salt-water fish  
 same (c) Lapp  
 samle collect  
 sammen together  
 sammen med with  
 samtale (c) conversation  
 sandwich (c) sandwich  
 sannhet (c) truth  
 sannsynlig probable  
 sannsynligvis probably  
 sans (c) sense  
 sant true  
 sant å si to tell the truth  
 savne miss  
 se (så, sett) see  
 se etter look for  
 se på look at, watch  
 se ut (som) seem, look (like)  
 seg himself, herself, itself,  
     oneself, themselves  
 seier (c) victory  
 seilbåt (c) sailing boat  
 seile sail  
 sel (c) seal  
 selge (solgte, solgt) sell  
 selskap (n) party  
 selv even  
 selv (my)self  
 selv om even if  
 selvfolgelig of course  
 sen late

sende send  
 seng (c) bed  
 senke lower  
 servere serve  
 sete (n) seat  
 sette (satte, satt) put  
 sette seg sit down  
 si (sa, sagt) say  
 side (c) side  
 siden since  
     for ... siden ago  
 sikker sure, certain  
 sikt (c) sight, term  
 sin, sine his (own), her (own),  
     their (own)  
 sist last  
 sitt his (own), her (own),  
     their (own)  
 sitte (satt, sittet) sit  
 sjef (c) boss  
 sjekk (c) cheque  
 sjeldent seldom  
 sjø (c) sea  
 sjøreise (c) cruise  
 skade (c) damage  
 skade hurt, injure  
 skal shall  
 skalldyr (n) shellfish  
 skam (c) shame  
 skamfull ashamed  
 skandinavisk Scandinavian  
 skap (n) cupboard  
 skifte change  
 skikk (c) custom  
 skille seg divorce  
 skinke (c) ham  
 skinkerull (c) luncheon meat  
 skip (n) ship  
 skipsfart (c) shipping  
 skive (c) slice  
 skje (c) spoon  
 skjegg (n) beard

skjelle ut curse  
 skjerf (*n*) scarf  
 skjorte (*c*) shirt  
 skjære (*skar, skåret*) cut  
 skjent although  
 skjort (*n*) skirt  
 sko (*c*) shoe  
 skog (*c*) forest, wood  
 skole (*c*) school  
 skotsk Scottish  
 Skottland Scotland  
 skremme frighten  
 skrive (*skrev, skrevet*) write  
 skru på turn on  
 skuffe disappoint  
 sky (*c*) cloud  
 skyld (*c*) blame  
 skylle pour  
 skynde (*seg*) hurry  
 Skål! Cheers!  
 slag (*n*) kind  
     hva slags what kind of  
 slanke seg slim  
 slappe av relax  
 slekting (*c*) relation  
 slik so, such  
 slips tie  
 slott (*n*) palace  
 slutt (*c*) end  
 slutt over  
 slutte end  
 slutte seg til join  
 slør (*n*) veil  
 slå (*slo, slått*) strike  
 slå av switch off  
 smake taste  
 smart smart  
 smile smile  
 smørbrød (*n*) open sandwich  
 snakke speak, talk  
 snart soon  
 sne (*c*) snow

snill kind  
 snillhet (*c*) kindness  
 snu turn  
 sno (*c*) snow  
 sol (*c*) sun  
 som who, whom, which  
 som like  
 som om as if  
 sommer (*c*) summer  
 sort black  
 sove (sov, sovet) sleep  
 soveværelse (*n*) bedroom  
 Spania Spain  
 spansk Spanish  
 spasere go for a walk  
 spasertur (*c*) walking tour,  
     walk  
 spent curious  
 sperret barred  
 spise eat  
 spille play  
 spiss pointed  
 sportsklær (*cpl*) sportswear  
 språk (*n*) language  
 spørre (spurte, spurt) (*etter*)  
     ask (for)  
 spørsmål (*n*) question  
 stakkars poor  
 stasjon (*c*) station  
 stanse stop  
 sted (*n*) place  
     av sted away  
 stein (*c*) stone  
 steke fry  
 sten (*c*) stone  
 sterk strong  
 stille still  
 stille spørsmål ask questions  
 stjele (stjal, stjålet) steal  
 stol (*c*) chair  
 stole på trust  
 stolt proud

stopp (*n*) stop  
 stor big, large  
 Storbritannia (Great) Britain  
 storslugen magnificent  
 straks immediately  
 streik (*c*) strike  
 strev (*n*) trouble  
 strømpebukser (*cpl*) tights  
 studere study  
 stue (*c*) sitting room  
 stund (*c*) while  
 stykke (*n*) piece  
 støtte support  
 stå (stod, stått) stand  
 stå opp get up  
 sukken (*n*) sugar  
 sulten hungry  
 supermarked (*n*)  
     supermarket  
 suppe (*c*) soup  
 svar (*n*) answer  
 svare answer  
 svart black  
 Sveits Switzerland  
 Sverige Sweden  
 svigerinne (*c*) sister-in-law  
 svinekotelett (*c*) pork chop  
 svoger (*c*) brother-in-law  
 svært very  
 svømme swim  
 syk ill  
 sykehus (*n*) hospital  
 syltetøy (*n*) jam  
 synes seem, think  
 synke decrease  
 særlig particularly  
 sølv (*n*) silver  
 sønn (*c*) son  
 sør (for) south (of)  
 sørge (over) mourn  
 seskenbarn (*n*) cousin  
 søster (*c*) sister

söt sweet, nice  
 søtsaker (*cpl*) sweets  
 sovn (*n*) sleep  
 så so; then  
 så ... som sec. 44 as ... as  
 så mye that much  
 så snart som as soon as  
 så å si so to speak

ta (tok, tatt) take, catch  
 ta feil be wrong  
 ta motet fra discourage  
 ta seg av take care of  
 ta seg sammen pull oneself  
     together  
 tak (*n*) ceiling  
 takk! thank you!  
     mange takk thank you  
     very much  
 takket være thanks to  
 tall (*n*) number  
 tanke (*c*) thought  
 tann (*c*) tooth  
 tante (*c*) aunt  
 tape lose  
 tapper brave  
 te (*c*) tea  
 teater (*n*) theatre  
 telefon (*c*) telephone  
 teller count  
 temmelig fairly, quite, rather  
 tenke think  
 teppe (*n*) carpet  
 tid (*c*) time, age  
 tidlig early  
     i morgen tidlig tomorrow  
     morning  
 til till, until, to  
 til høyre on/to the right  
 til slutt finally, at last  
 til venstre on/to the left  
 tilbake back

**tilbringe** (tilbrakte, tilbrakt)  
 spend (time)  
**tilbud** (*n*) proposal  
**tilfreds** content  
**tilgi** (tilgav, tilgitt) forgive  
**tilhøre** belong to  
**tilkalle** call  
**time** (*c*) hour  
**tine** thaw  
**tog** (*n*) train  
**tom** empty  
**topp** (*c*) summit  
**torg** (*n*) square, market  
**torsk** (*c*) cod  
**tosk** (*c*) fool  
**trapp** (*c*) staircase  
**trappeoppgang** (*c*) stairway  
**travel** busy  
*jeg har det travelt*  
 I'm in a hurry  
**tre-** wooden  
**tre** (*n*) tree  
**treffe** (traff, truffet) meet  
**trekke** (trakk, trukket) pull  
**trener** (*c*) coach  
**trenge** need  
**trett** tired  
**trist** sad  
**trives** thrive  
**tro** believe, think  
**trofast** faithful  
**tung** heavy  
**tvile** doubt  
**tydelig** distinct  
**tykk** thick  
**tynn** thin  
**tsyk** German  
**Tyskland** Germany  
**to** thaw  
**tørke** (av) wipe  
**tåket** foggy  
**tåpelig** silly

**uforglemmelig** unforgettable  
**uheldigvis** unfortunately  
**uhell** (*n*) accident  
**uke** (*c*) week  
**ulykke** (*c*) accident  
**umulig** impossible  
**umåtelig** immensely  
**under** during, under  
**underholdende** entertaining  
**undertrøye** (*c*) vest  
**undertøy** (*n*) underwear  
**undervisning** (*c*) education  
**undre seg** wonder  
**ung** young  
**unngå** (unngikk, unngått)  
 prevent, avoid  
**unnskyld** (meg) excuse me  
**unnskyilde** excuse  
**ur** (*n*) watch  
**ut, ute** out  
**uten** without  
**utenfor** outside  
**utland** foreign parts  
*i utlandet* abroad  
*til utlandet* abroad  
**utlending** (*c*) foreigner  
**utmerket** excellent  
**uttrykke** express  
  
**vakker** pretty, beautiful  
**valg** (*n*) choice, election  
**valiskisk** Welsh  
**vanlig** ordinary, usual  
**vanligvis** usually  
**vann** (*n*) water, lake  
**vansklig** difficult, hard  
**vanskighet** (*c*) difficulty  
**vant til** used to  
**varebil** (*c*) van  
**varemagasin** (*n*) department  
 store  
**varer** (*cpl*) goods

**varm** warm, hot  
**varme** (*c*) heat  
**vaske** (*seg*) wash  
**ved** (*c*) wood  
**ved by, at**  
**ved siden av** next to  
**vegg** (*c*) wall  
**vei** (*c*) road, way  
**veikryss** (*n*) crossroads  
**vekke** wake up  
**vel** well  
**velkommen** welcome  
**vende** turn  
**vende tilbake** go back,  
 return  
**venn** (*c*) friend  
**vennlige** friendly, kind  
**venstre** left  
**vente** expect  
**vente (på)** wait (for)  
**verd(t)** worth  
**verden** (*c*) world  
**verken ... eller** neither ... nor  
**vertinne** (*c*) hostess  
**veske** (*c*) handbag, bag  
**vettskremt** terrified  
**vi** we  
**vidunderlig** wonderful  
**viklig** important  
**vil** will  
**vil ha** want(s)  
**vilje** (*c*) will  
**ville** want (to)  
**ville nødig** would rather not  
**vin** (*c*) wine  
**vind** (*c*) wind

**vindu** (*n*) window  
**vinne** (vant, vunnet) win  
**vinter** (*c*) winter  
**virkelig** indeed, really  
**vise** show  
*vise seg* appear  
*viss* certain  
**vite** (vet, visste, visst) know  
**vokse** grow  
**vott** (*c*) mitten  
**vri** twist  
**vær** (*n*) weather  
**vær så god!** can I help you?  
**vær så snill/god** please  
**være** (er, var, vært) be  
**værelse** (*n*) room  
**våkne** wake up  
**vår** (*c*) spring  
**vår our, ours**  
**våt** wet  
  
**yrke** (*n*) profession

**øke** increase  
**øl** (*n*) beer  
**ønske** want, wish  
**øvelse** (*c*) exercise  
**øye** (*n*) eye  
**øyeblikk** (*n*) moment

å to  
**åpen** open  
**åpne** open  
**år** (*n*) year  
**årsak** (*c*) reason, cause  
**årstid** (*c*) season